

1 **1/7/16 Draft**
2

3 The Honorable Gina McCarthy
4 Administrator
5 U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
6 1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.
7 Washington, D.C. 20460
8

9 Subject: SAB Review of the EPA's draft Assessment of the Potential Impacts of Hydraulic
10 Fracturing for Oil and Gas on Drinking Water Resources
11

12 Dear Administrator McCarthy:
13

14 The EPA Science Advisory Board (SAB) is pleased to transmit its response to a request from the U.S.
15 Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Office of Research and Development (ORD) to review and
16 provide advice on scientific questions associated with the EPA's June 2015 draft *Assessment of the*
17 *Potential Impacts of Hydraulic Fracturing for Oil and Gas on Drinking Water Resources (External*
18 *Review Draft, EPA/600/R-15/047, June 2015)*. The draft Assessment Report synthesizes available
19 scientific literature and data on the potential for hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas development to
20 change the quality or quantity of drinking water resources, and identifies factors affecting the frequency
21 or severity of any potential changes. The SAB was asked to comment on various aspects of the EPA's
22 draft Assessment Report, including the descriptions of hydraulic fracturing activities and relationship to
23 drinking water resources, the individual stages in the hydraulic fracturing water cycle (HFWC), and the
24 identification and hazard evaluation of hydraulic fracturing chemicals.
25

26 The EPA developed the draft Assessment Report in response to the U.S. Congress, which urged the EPA
27 in late 2009 to examine the relationship between hydraulic fracturing and drinking water resources. In
28 response, the EPA developed a research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) which was reviewed by the SAB
29 and issued in 2011. A Progress Report (U.S. EPA, 2011) on the study detailing the EPA's research
30 approaches, activities, and remaining work was released in late 2012, and was followed by a
31 consultation with individual expert members of SAB's Hydraulic Fracturing Research Advisory Panel
32 convened under the auspices of the SAB in May 2013. The EPA's assessment includes original research,
33 and the results from the EPA's research projects were considered in the development of the EPA's draft
34 Assessment Report.
35

36 In general, the SAB finds the EPA's overall approach to assess the potential impacts of hydraulic
37 fracturing for oil and gas on drinking water resources, focusing on the individual stages in the HFWC, to
38 be appropriate and comprehensive. The SAB also finds that the agency provided a generally
39 comprehensive overview of the available literature that describes the factors affecting the relationship of
40 hydraulic fracturing and drinking water, and adequately described the findings of such published data in
41 the draft Assessment Report. However, the SAB identified several areas of the draft Assessment Report
42 that can be improved.
43

44 The SAB has concerns regarding the clarity and adequacy of support for several major findings
45 presented within the draft Assessment Report that seek to draw national-level conclusions regarding the
46 impacts of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources. The SAB is concerned that these major
47 findings are presented ambiguously within the Executive Summary and are inconsistent with the
48 observations, data, and levels of uncertainty presented and discussed in the body of the draft Assessment

1 Report. Of particular concern in this regard is the high-level conclusion statement on page ES-6 that
2 “We did not find evidence that hydraulic fracturing mechanisms have led to widespread, systemic
3 impacts on drinking water resources in the United States.” The SAB finds that this statement does not
4 clearly describe the system(s) of interest (e.g., groundwater, surface water) nor the definitions of
5 “systemic,” “widespread,” or “impacts.” The SAB is also concerned that this statement does not reflect
6 the uncertainties and data limitations described in the body of the Report associated with such impacts.
7 The statement is ambiguous and requires clarification and additional explanation.

8
9 The SAB recommends that the EPA revise the major statements of findings in the Executive Summary
10 and elsewhere in the draft Assessment Report to be more precise, and to clearly link these statements to
11 evidence provided in the body of the draft Assessment Report. The SAB also recommends that the EPA
12 discuss the significant data limitations and uncertainties, as documented in the body of the Report, when
13 presenting the major findings.

14
15 While the EPA appropriately aimed to develop national-level analyses and perspective, most stresses to
16 surface or ground water resources associated with stages of the HFWC are localized. For example, the
17 impacts of water acquisition will predominantly be felt locally at small space and time scales. These
18 local-level hydraulic fracturing impacts can be severe, and the draft Assessment Report needs to do a
19 better job of recognizing the importance of local impacts. In this context, the SAB recommends that the
20 agency should include and explain the status, data on potential releases, and findings if available for the
21 EPA and state investigations conducted in Dimock, Pennsylvania, Pavillion, Wyoming, and Parker
22 County, Texas where hydraulic fracturing activities are perceived by many members of the public to
23 have caused significant local impacts to drinking water resources. Examination of these high-visibility
24 cases is important so that the public can understand the status of investigations in these areas,
25 conclusions associated with the investigations, lessons learned for hydraulic fracturing practice if any,
26 plans for remediation if any, and the degree to which information from these case studies can be
27 extrapolated to other locations.

28
29 The SAB recommends that sections of the draft Assessment Report should be revised to make these
30 sections more suitable for a broad audience. It is important that the Assessment Report, and especially
31 the Executive Summary, be understandable to the general public. The SAB makes specific
32 recommendations about opportunities to define terms, provide illustrations, clarify ambiguities and be
33 more precise in the presentation of major findings.

34
35 The SAB provides several suggestions to improve the agency’s approach for assessing the potential for
36 hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas to change the quality or quantity of drinking water resources. While
37 the draft Assessment Report comprehensively summarizes the available information concerning the
38 sources and quantities of water used from surface water, ground water, and treated wastewaters, the
39 SAB finds that the potential for water availability impacts on drinking water resources is greatest in
40 areas with high hydraulic fracturing water use, low water availability, and frequent drought. The SAB
41 agrees there are important gaps in the data available to assess water use that limit understanding of
42 hydraulic fracturing impacts on water acquisition.

43
44 The EPA should also clearly describe the probability and risk associated with hydraulic fracturing well
45 injection-related failure scenarios and mechanisms, to help the reader understand the most significant
46 failure mechanisms regarding this stage in the HFWC. The agency should provide more information
47 regarding the extent or potential extent of the effects of chemical mixing processes from hydraulic

1 fracturing operations to drinking water supplies. The EPA should provide additional detail describing
2 the extent and duration of the impacts of spilled liquids and releases of flowback and produced waters
3 when they occur.

4
5 The agency should include additional major findings associated with the higher likelihood of impacts to
6 drinking water resources associated with hydraulic fracturing well construction, well integrity, and well
7 injection problems, and from large spill events. The EPA should also include an additional major finding
8 that: (a) large severe hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water-related contaminant release
9 incidents such as blowouts, and smaller common incidents (usually containment leaks), may cause
10 effects on drinking water resources on a volume basis; and (b) blowouts are more severe in terms of
11 impact due to the high-volume, short-duration characteristics of the release.

12
13 The EPA should compile toxicological information on chemicals employed in hydraulic fracturing in a
14 more inclusive manner, and not limit the selection of hydraulic fracturing chemicals of concern to those
15 that have formal noncancer oral reference values (RfVs) and cancer oral slope factors (OSFs). The
16 agency should use a broad range of toxicity data, including information pertinent to subchronic
17 exposures, from a number of reliable sources cited by the SAB in addition to those used in the draft
18 Assessment Report to conduct hazard evaluation for hydraulic fracturing chemicals. As the EPA
19 broadens inclusion of toxicology information to populate missing toxicity data, the EPA can expand the
20 tiered hierarchy of data described in the EPA report to give higher priority to chemicals with RfVs
21 without excluding other quality toxicology information that is useful for risk assessment purposes.

22
23 Also, an important limitation of the EPA's hazard evaluation of chemicals across the HFWC is the
24 agency's lack of breadth in its analysis of most likely exposure scenarios and hazards associated with
25 hydraulic fracturing activities. The agency should identify the most likely exposure scenarios and
26 hazards. In addition, the EPA should identify the most likely exposure pathways for impacting drinking
27 water resources based on consideration of findings in prospective and retrospective site investigations,
28 as well as case studies of private wells and surface water impacted by spills, blowback and
29 storage/treatment of waste water. Furthermore, the EPA developed a multi-criteria decision analysis
30 (MCDA) approach to analyze hydraulic fracturing chemicals and identify/prioritize those of most
31 concern. In light of the limitations described in the SAB's response to Charge Question 7, and given that
32 the EPA applied this approach to very few chemicals, the EPA should explicitly state that these MCDA
33 results (based only on chemicals with RfVs) should not be used for prioritization of chemicals of most
34 concern nationally nor to direct future toxicity testing research needs.

35
36 The EPA should carefully distinguish between hydraulic fracturing chemicals injected into a hydraulic
37 fracturing well vs. compounds that come back out of the hydraulic fracturing well in produced fluids,
38 and between those chemical constituents and potential impacts unique to hydraulic fracturing oil and gas
39 extraction from those that also exist as a component of conventional oil and gas development. The
40 agency should also clarify whether compounds identified as being of most concern in produced water
41 are products of the hydraulic fracturing activity, flowback, or late-stage produced water, or are
42 chemicals of concern derived from oil and gas production activities that are unrelated to hydraulic
43 fracturing activity.

44
45 The SAB recommends that the agency describe best management practices used by industry regarding
46 operations associated with each stage of the HFWC, in order to better inform the public on available
47 processes, methods and technologies that can minimize hydraulic fracturing impacts to drinking water

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—
This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

1 resources. The EPA should also include additional discussion on background and pre-existing baseline
2 chemistry of surface and groundwater in order to better understand the impacts of hydraulic fracturing-
3 related spills and leaks.

4 The agency should also provide clearer information on certain wastewater hydraulic fracturing treatment
5 process fundamentals, and the occurrence and removal of disinfection by-product precursors other than
6 bromide. The agency should describe the basis for nationwide estimates of hydraulic fracturing-related
7 wastewater production, various aspects of hydraulic fracturing-waste disposal, the locations of
8 wastewater treatment and disposal facilities relative to downstream public water supply intakes and
9 wells, the potential impacts of pollutant concentration in certain water reuse applications, and trends in
10 wastewater disposal methods.

11 Within the body of this report, the SAB provides other general and specific recommendations to
12 improve the clarity and scientific basis of the EPA's analyses within the EPA's draft Assessment Report.

13
14 The SAB appreciates the opportunity to provide the EPA with advice on this important subject. We look
15 forward to receiving the agency's response on this topic.

16
17 Sincerely,

18
19
20 Enclosure

21
22

NOTICE

This report has been written as part of the activities of the EPA Science Advisory Board, a public advisory group providing extramural scientific information and advice to the Administrator and other officials of the Environmental Protection Agency. The Board is structured to provide balanced, expert assessment of scientific matters related to the problems facing the agency. This report has not been reviewed for approval by the agency and, hence, the contents of this report do not represent the views and policies of the Environmental Protection Agency, nor of other agencies in the Executive Branch of the Federal government, nor does mention of trade names or commercial products constitute a recommendation for use. Reports of the EPA Science Advisory Board are posted on the EPA website at <http://www.epa.gov/sab>.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45

**U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Science Advisory Board
Hydraulic Fracturing Research Advisory Panel**

CHAIR

Dr. David A. Dzombak, Hamerschlag University Professor and Head of the Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, College of Engineering, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA

MEMBERS

Dr. Stephen W. Almond, Director of Research & Development, Fritz Industries, Inc, Houston, TX

Dr. E. Scott Bair, Emeritus Professor, School of Earth Sciences, Ohio State University, Columbus, OH

Dr. Peter Bloomfield, Professor, Statistics Department, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, NC

Dr. Steven R. Bohlen, State Oil and Gas Supervisor, and Head of the Division of Oil, Gas and Geothermal Resources (DOGGR), State of California Department of Conservation, Sacramento, CA

Dr. Elizabeth W. Boyer, Associate Professor, Department of Ecosystem Science & Management, Pennsylvania State University, University Park, PA

Dr. Susan L. Brantley, Distinguished Professor of Geosciences and Director, Earth and Environmental Systems Institute, Pennsylvania State University, University Park, PA

Dr. James V. Bruckner, Professor of Pharmacology and Toxicology, Department of Pharmaceutical and Biomedical Sciences, College of Pharmacy, University of Georgia, Athens, GA

Dr. Thomas L. Davis, Professor, Department of Geophysics, Colorado School of Mines, Golden, CO

Dr. Joseph J. DeGeorge, Global Head of Safety Assessment and Laboratory Animal Resources, Merck Research Laboratories, Lansdale, PA

Dr. Joel Ducoste, Professor, Civil, Construction, and Environmental Engineering Department, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, NC

Dr. Shari Dunn-Norman, Professor, Geosciences and Geological and Petroleum Engineering Department, Missouri University of Science and Technology, Rolla, MO

Dr. Katherine Bennett Ensor, Professor and Chair, Department of Statistics, Rice University, Houston, TX

Dr. Elaine M. Faustman, Professor, Department of Environmental Health, and Director, Institute for Risk Analysis and Risk Communication, School of Public Health, University of Washington, Seattle, WA

1
2 **Mr. John V. Fontana**, Professional Geologist and President, Vista GeoScience LLC, Golden, CO

3
4 **Dr. Daniel J. Goode**, Research Hydrologist, U.S. Geological Survey, Pennsylvania Water Science
5 Center, Exton, PA

6
7 **Dr. Bruce D. Honeyman**, Associate Vice President for Research and Emeritus Professor of
8 Environmental Science and Engineering, Colorado School of Mines, Golden, CO

9
10 **Mr. Walter R. Hufford**, Director of Government and Regulatory Affairs, Talisman Energy USA Inc. -
11 REPSOL, Warrendale, PA

12
13 **Dr. Richard F. Jack**, Director, Vertical Marketing for Environmental and Industrial Markets, Thermo
14 Fisher Scientific Inc., San Jose, CA

15
16 **Dr. Dawn S. Kaback**, Principal Geochemist, Amec Foster Wheeler, Denver, CO

17
18 **Dr. Abby A. Li**, Senior Managing Scientist, Exponent Health Sciences, Exponent, Inc., San Francisco,
19 CA

20
21 **Mr. Dean N. Malouta**, White Mountain Energy Consulting, LLC, Houston, TX

22
23 **Dr. Cass T. Miller**, Daniel A. Okun Distinguished Professor of Environmental Engineering,
24 Department of Environmental Sciences and Engineering, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, NC

25
26 **Dr. Laura J. Pyrak-Nolte**, Professor, Department of Physics, College of Science, Purdue University,
27 West Lafayette, IN

28
29 **Dr. Stephen Randtke**, Professor, Department of Civil, Environmental, and Architectural Engineering,
30 University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS

31
32 **Dr. Joseph N. Ryan**, Professor of Environmental Engineering and Bennett-Lindstedt Faculty Fellow,
33 Department of Civil, Environmental, and Architectural Engineering, University of Colorado-Boulder,
34 Boulder CO

35
36 **Dr. James E. Saiers**, Clifton R. Musser Professor of Hydrology and Associate Dean of Academic
37 Affairs, School of Forestry and Environmental Studies, Yale University, New Haven, CT

38
39 **Dr. Azra N. Tutuncu**, Professor and Harry D. Campbell Chair, Petroleum Engineering Department, and
40 Director, Unconventional Natural Gas and Oil Institute, Colorado School of Mines, Golden, CO

41
42 **Dr. Paul K. Westerhoff**, Senior Advisor to the Provost for Engineering & Science, and Professor,
43 School of Sustainable Engineering and The Built Environment, Ira A. Fulton Schools of Engineering,
44 Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ

45
46 **Dr. Thomas M. Young**, Professor of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of California –
47 Davis, Davis, CA

1
2
3
4
5
6

SCIENCE ADVISORY BOARD STAFF

Mr. Edward Hanlon, Designated Federal Officer, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Science Advisory Board Staff, Washington, DC

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1
2
3 **Acronyms and Abbreviations vi**
4 **1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY 1**
5 **2. INTRODUCTION..... 20**
6 2.1. BACKGROUND..... 20
7 2.2. SAB REVIEW 20
8 **3. RESPONSES TO the EPA’s CHARGE QUESTIONS 22**
9 3.1. GOALS, BACKGROUND AND HISTORY OF THE ASSESSMENT..... 22
10 3.2. WATER ACQUISITION STAGE IN THE HFWC..... 26
11 3.3. CHEMICAL MIXING STAGE IN THE HFWC 36
12 3.4. WELL INJECTION STAGE IN THE HFWC..... 46
13 3.5. FLOWBACK AND PRODUCED WATER STAGE IN THE HFWC..... 61
14 3.6. WASTEWATER TREATMENT AND WASTE DISPOSAL STAGE IN THE HFWC..... 76
15 3.7. CHEMICALS USED OR PRESENT IN HYDRAULIC FRACTURING FLUIDS 92
16 3.8. SYNTHESIS OF SCIENCE ON POTENTIAL IMPACTS OF HYDRAULIC FRACTURING ON DRINKING
17 WATER RESOURCES, AND EXECUTIVE SUMMARY 107
18 **REFERENCES..... 114**
19 **APPENDIX A–EPA’S CHARGE QUESTIONS A-1**
20

Acronyms and Abbreviations

1		
2		
3	ATSDR	Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry
4	BMP	Best Management Practices
5	BTEX	Benzene, Toluene, Ethylbenzene, and Xylenes
6	CBM	Coal Bed Methane
7	CERCLA	Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act
8	COGCC	Colorado Oil and Gas Conservation Commission
9	CWA	Clean Water Act
10	CWT	Centralized Waste Treatment
11	CWTFs	Centralized Water Treatment Facilities
12	DOE	U.S. Department of Energy
13	DBP	Disinfection By-Product
14	EPA	U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
15	FDA	U.S. Food and Drug Administration
16	GIS	Geographic Information System
17	HAA	Haloacetic Acid
18	HF	Hydraulic Fracturing
19	HFWC	Hydraulic Fracturing Water Cycle
20	K _{ow}	Octanol-Water Partition Coefficient
21	MCDA	Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis
22	MCLs	Maximum Contaminant Levels
23	MRLs	Minimal Risk Levels
24	NDMA	N-Nitrosodimethylamine
25	NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
26	NPDES	National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System
27	OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
28	O&M	Operation & Maintenance
29	ORD	EPA Office of Research and Development
30	POTW	Publicly Owned Treatment Works
31	PWS	Public Water Supply
32	PWSS	Public Water Supply Systems
33	QSAR	Quantitative Structure-Activity Relationships
34	RCRA	Resource Conservation and Recovery Act
35	RfDs	Chronic Reference Doses
36	RfV	Reference Value
37	SAB	EPA Science Advisory Board
38	TDS	Total Dissolved Solids
39	THM	Trihalomethane
40	TLVs	Threshold Limit Values
41	TOC	Total Organic Carbon
42	TOX	Total Organic Halide
43	UIC	Underground Injection Control
44	USGS	U.S. Geological Survey
45	VOCs	Volatile Organic Compounds
46		

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Overview

The EPA’s Office of Research and Development (ORD) requested that the Science Advisory Board (SAB) conduct a peer review and provide advice on scientific questions associated with the EPA’s June 2015 draft *Assessment of the Potential Impacts of Hydraulic Fracturing for Oil and Gas on Drinking Water Resources (External Review Draft, EPA/600/R-15/047, June 2015)* (hereafter, the “draft Assessment Report”). The draft Assessment Report synthesizes available scientific literature and data on the potential for hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas to change the quality or quantity of drinking water resources, and identifies factors affecting the frequency or severity of any potential changes.

The EPA developed the draft Assessment Report in response to the U.S. Congress, which urged the EPA in late 2009 to examine the relationship between hydraulic fracturing and drinking water. In response, the EPA first developed a Research Scoping document (U.S. EPA, 2010), followed by a detailed research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011), both of which were reviewed by the SAB, in 2010 and in 2011, respectively. A Progress Report (U.S. EPA, 2012) on the study describing the EPA’s research approaches, activities, and remaining work was released in late 2012, and was followed by a consultation with individual expert members of SAB’s Hydraulic Fracturing Research Advisory Panel (SAB HF Panel) convened under the auspices of the SAB in May 2013. The EPA used literature and the results from the EPA’s research projects to develop the draft Assessment Report.

The EPA examined over 3,500 individual sources of information, and cited over 950 of these sources in the draft Assessment Report. The sources of data that the EPA evaluated included articles published in science and engineering journals, federal and state reports, non-governmental organization reports, oil and gas industry publications, other publicly available data and information, including confidential and non-confidential business information, submitted by industry to the EPA. The draft Assessment Report also includes citation of relevant literature developed as part of the EPA’s research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011).

At a series of public meetings held in the last quarter of 2015 and the first quarter of 2016, the SAB HF Panel reviewed the draft Assessment Report and considered public comments to develop advice on the scientific adequacy of the EPA’s draft Assessment Report. The chartered SAB deliberated on the SAB HF Panel’s draft report in *[Insert Month/Year]* and *[Insert chartered SAB disposition of the draft Panel Report]*. The body of this report provides the advice and recommendations of the SAB.

The SAB was asked to provide advice and comment on various aspects of the EPA’s draft Assessment Report through responses to eight charge questions. The multi-part charge questions were formulated to follow the structure of the assessment, including the introduction, the descriptions of hydraulic fracturing activities and drinking water resources, the individual stages in the hydraulic fracturing water cycle (HFWC), the identification and hazard evaluation of hydraulic fracturing chemicals, and the overall synthesis of the materials presented in the assessment.

In general, the SAB finds the EPA’s overall approach to assess the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas on drinking water resources, focusing on the individual stages in the HFWC, to be appropriate and comprehensive. The SAB also finds that the agency provided a generally

1 comprehensive overview of the available literature that describes the factors affecting the relationship of
2 hydraulic fracturing and drinking water, and adequately described the findings of such published data in
3 the draft Assessment Report. However, the SAB identified several areas of the draft Assessment Report
4 that can be improved, as described further below.

5
6 ***Thematic Areas for Improving the Draft Assessment Report***

7
8 The SAB identified several thematic areas for improvement of the draft Assessment Report.

9
10 Revisions to Statements on Major Findings:

11
12 The SAB finds that several major findings presented within the draft Assessment Report that seek to
13 draw national-level conclusions regarding the impacts of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water
14 resources do not clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the findings developed in the chapters of the
15 draft Assessment Report, and that these findings are not adequately supported with data or analysis from
16 within the body of the draft Assessment Report. The SAB is concerned that these major findings are
17 presented ambiguously within the Executive Summary and are inconsistent with the observations, data,
18 and levels of uncertainty presented and discussed in the body of the draft Assessment Report. Of
19 particular concern is the high-level conclusion on page ES-6 that “We did not find evidence that
20 hydraulic fracturing mechanisms have led to widespread, systemic impacts on drinking water resources
21 in the United States.” The SAB finds that this statement does not clearly describe the system(s) of
22 interest (e.g., groundwater, surface water) nor the definitions of “systemic,” “widespread,” or “impacts.”
23 The SAB is also concerned that this statement does not reflect the uncertainties and data limitations
24 described in the body of the Report associated with such impacts. The statement is ambiguous and
25 requires clarification and additional explanation.

26
27 The agency should strengthen the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 Synthesis by linking the stated
28 findings more directly to evidence presented in the body of the draft Assessment Report. The EPA
29 should more precisely describe each of the major findings of the draft Assessment Report in both the
30 Executive Summary and Chapter 10 Synthesis, and provide a full accounting of all available
31 information, including specific cases of drinking water impacts, that relate to these major findings. The
32 agency should also modify the Chapter 10 Synthesis discussion on major findings to not simply present
33 a summary of findings from Chapters 4-9 of the draft Assessment Report but rather to present integrated
34 conclusions, including identification of those hydraulic fracturing practices demonstrated to be effective
35 in safeguarding drinking water resources. The EPA should also discuss research needs and steps that
36 could be taken to reduce uncertainties related to the HFWC within the Chapter 10 Synthesis.

37
38 More Attention to Local Impacts

39
40 While the EPA appropriately aimed to develop national-level analyses and perspective, most stresses to
41 surface or ground water resources associated with stages of the HFWC are localized. For example, the
42 impacts of water acquisition will predominantly be felt locally at small space and time scales. These
43 local-level hydraulic fracturing impacts can be severe, and the draft Assessment Report needs to do a
44 better job of recognizing the importance of local impacts.

45
46 In the context of the need for more attention to local impacts, the SAB finds that the agency should
47 include and explain the status, data on potential releases, and findings if available for the EPA and state

1 investigations conducted in Dimock, Pennsylvania, Pavillion, Wyoming, and Parker County, Texas
2 where hydraulic fracturing activities are perceived by many members of the public to have caused
3 impacts to drinking water resources. Examination of these high-visibility cases is important so that the
4 public can understand the status of investigations in these areas, conclusions associated with the
5 investigations, lessons learned for hydraulic fracturing practice if any, plans for remediation if any, and
6 the degree to which information from these case studies can be extrapolated to other locations.

7
8 The SAB also agrees that the EPA should continue research on expanded case studies and long-term
9 prospective studies, and should place a high priority on conducting additional field studies in order to
10 develop a much more comprehensive chemical exposure database. The draft Assessment Report should
11 identify needs for future research, assessment and field studies, and discuss the agency's plans for
12 conducting prospective studies and other research that the EPA had planned to conduct but did not
13 conduct. The lack of prospective case studies as originally planned by the EPA and described in the
14 research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) is a major limitation of the draft Assessment Report. Such studies
15 would allow the EPA to monitor water acquisition and its effects to a level of detail not practiced by
16 industry or required by state regulation. Such detailed new data would allow the EPA to reduce current
17 uncertainties and research gaps about the relation between hydraulic fracturing water acquisition and
18 drinking water.

19
20 The agency provided limited information on the magnitude of hydraulic fracturing spills and estimated
21 the frequency of on-site spills based upon information from two states, and the SAB agrees that these
22 estimates cannot be confidently extrapolated across the entire U.S. based on such limited information.
23 However, the EPA should assess the current state of data reporting on spills and the nature of hydraulic
24 fracturing fluids, and include a more thorough presentation and explanation of the frequency and types
25 of data that the hydraulic fracturing industry reports. In addition, the SAB finds that it is essential to
26 have more extensive and reliable information on the intensity and duration of human exposures to
27 determine whether hydraulic fracturing activities in different locales pose health risks.

28
29 The SAB also agrees there are important gaps and uncertainties in publicly available data on sources and
30 quantities of water used in hydraulic fracturing. The agency should synthesize information that is
31 collected by the states but not available in mainstream databases, such as well completion reports,
32 permit applications and the associated water management plans. In addition, the EPA should assess
33 whether there are aquifers that are particularly impacted by hydraulic fracturing activities, and if so,
34 provide quantifiable information on this topic within the draft Assessment Report.

35 Data Needs Regarding Chemicals of Concern

36
37
38 Another area for improvement is the EPA's reliance on the publicly available databases for this draft
39 Assessment Report, including the FracFocus Chemical Disclosure Registry database and the Water Use
40 in the United States database. The SAB agrees that the FracFocus database may not be complete because
41 it is voluntary and does not include some important information because of its proprietary nature, and
42 lacks information on the identity, properties, frequency of use, magnitude of exposure, and toxicity
43 potential for a substantial number of chemicals. The agency should acknowledge that there is limited
44 information on what is being injected, and should describe these concerns regarding its reliance on
45 FracFocus data within the draft Assessment Report. Within the draft Assessment Report, the agency
46 should also characterize in some way data on proprietary compounds that the EPA may have, and
47 information provided in FracFocus on chemical class and concentration (% mass of hydraulic fracturing

1 fluid). Since the FracFocus data that the agency assessed was current up to February 2013, the SAB also
2 recommends that the draft Assessment Report include data from more recent versions of FracFocus.
3 Further, the EPA should articulate needs for information that is collected and available from individual
4 states and that could help with assessment yet is not readily accessible.

5
6 The SAB commends the EPA for conceiving and designing the Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis
7 (MCDA) presented in this chapter, and for formulating a logical approach for assessing the scope and
8 potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing on national drinking water resources, given that the available
9 information is limited and fragmented. However, the SAB finds that the agency should not restrict the
10 criteria for selection of hydraulic fracturing chemicals of concern to solely chemicals that have formal
11 noncancer oral reference values (RfVs) and cancer oral slope factors (OSFs). The agency should expand
12 the criteria for identifying hydraulic fracturing chemicals of concern through use of peer-reviewed
13 toxicity data, including information pertinent to subchronic exposures, available from a number of
14 reliable sources. The draft Assessment Report should explicitly indicate what fraction of the compounds
15 identified in hydraulic fracturing fluid and/or produced waters have some hazard information (e.g., any
16 government-reviewed toxicity data used for risk assessment), and what fraction have no available
17 information.

18 The SAB recommends that the EPA conduct its own analysis of flowback water for organic compounds,
19 since flowback water composition data are limited and the majority of available data are for inorganics.
20 In addition, data are needed on the formation of disinfectant by-products in drinking water treatment
21 plants downstream from Centralized Water Treatment Facilities or from Publicly Owned Treatment
22 Works receiving hydraulic-fracturing related wastewater.

23 The EPA should carefully distinguish between hydraulic fracturing chemicals injected into a hydraulic
24 fracturing well vs. compounds that come back out of the hydraulic fracturing well in produced fluids,
25 and between those chemical constituents and potential impacts unique to hydraulic fracturing oil and gas
26 extraction from those that also exist as a component of conventional oil and gas development. The
27 agency should also clarify whether compounds identified as being of most concern in produced water
28 are products of the hydraulic fracturing activity, flowback, or late-stage produced water, or are
29 chemicals of concern derived from oil and gas production activities that are unrelated to hydraulic
30 fracturing activity.

31 32 Best Management Practices and Improvements in Hydraulic Fracturing Operations

33
34 The SAB recommends that the agency describe best management practices used by industry regarding
35 operations associated with each stage of the HFWC, in order to better inform the public on available
36 processes, methods and technologies that can minimize hydraulic fracturing impacts to drinking water
37 resources. Also, the draft Assessment Report should summarize improvements, changes or
38 accomplishments that have occurred since 2012 in hydraulic fracturing operations related to the HFWC.
39 Since 2012, many significant technological and regulatory oversight improvements have occurred
40 related to well construction, well integrity, well injection, and other aspects of the HFWC. These
41 improvements should be examined in the draft Assessment Report.

1 Transparency and Clarity of the Assessment

2
3 The SAB recommends that sections of the draft Assessment Report should be revised to make these
4 sections more suitable for a broad audience. As currently written, the Executive Summary is
5 understandable to technical experts in geoscience and engineering, but will be less clear to a general
6 audience. It is important that the general public be able to understand the Assessment Report and
7 especially the Executive Summary. The SAB makes specific recommendations about opportunities to
8 define terms, provide illustrations, clarify ambiguities, and be more precise in the presentation of major
9 findings. Clearer statements are needed on the goals and scope of the assessment and on specific
10 descriptions of hydraulic fracturing activities. Well-designed diagrams and illustrations should be added
11 to enhance the public’s understanding of hydraulic fracturing activities and operations. Technical terms
12 should be used sparingly and should always be defined, and graphics should be introduced to illustrate
13 and clarify key concepts and processes.

14
15 *Highlights of Responses to Specific Charge Questions*

16
17 The SAB provides a number of additional suggestions to improve the agency’s approach for assessing
18 the potential for hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas to change the quality or quantity of drinking water
19 resources. Among these is a recommendation that the Assessment Report should identify critical
20 research needs for reducing uncertainties. A more detailed description of the technical recommendations
21 is included in this SAB report, and the responses to specific charge questions are highlighted below.

22
23 Goals, Background and History of the Assessment (Charge Question 1)

24
25 *The goal of the assessment was to review, analyze, and synthesize available data and*
26 *information concerning the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water*
27 *resources in the United States, including identifying factors affecting the frequency or severity of*
28 *any potential impacts. In Chapter 1 of the assessment, are the goals, background, scope,*
29 *approach, and intended use of this assessment clearly articulated? In Chapters 2 and 3, are the*
30 *descriptions of hydraulic fracturing and drinking water resources clear and informative as*
31 *background material? Are there topics that should be added to Chapters 2 and 3 to provide*
32 *needed background for the assessment?*

33
34 The SAB was asked whether the opening chapters of the draft Assessment Report were clearly
35 articulated and informative, and whether additional topics should be added. Chapters 1, 2, and 3 provide
36 a generally well written overview of the assessment and descriptions of hydraulic fracturing and
37 drinking water resources. However, Chapter 1 could be improved by including and highlighting a
38 concise statement of the goals of the assessment, and by incorporating a more careful statement of its
39 scope. The description of hydraulic fracturing in Chapter 2 is clear and informative, but needs to give
40 more emphasis to some aspects of hydraulic fracturing that distinguish it from more conventional well
41 development. The description of drinking water resources in Chapter 3 is also clear and informative, but
42 also could be improved, in particular by paying more attention to geology and including more discussion
43 of the characteristics and proximity of aquifers.

44
45 Since the intended users of the draft Assessment Report range from policy makers and regulators to the
46 industry and the public, the EPA should include illustrative material (illustrations, diagrams, and charts)
47 in these chapters so that non-technical readers have visuals to facilitate understanding of this technical

1 material. Within Chapters 2 and/or 3, the EPA should also include discussions of new hydraulic
2 fracturing technologies. Within Chapter 1 or within an Appendix, the EPA should include an overview
3 discussion of federal and state standards and regulations that pertain to hydraulic fracturing activities for
4 oil and gas development, and mechanisms for enforcement of the laws with respect to protection of
5 surface water quality, ground water quality, municipal water supplies, and private wells. The overview
6 should provide a description of organizations responsible for monitoring and regulation of hydraulic
7 fracturing-related activities.

8
9 The EPA should add more information regarding groundwater resources in hydraulically fractured areas
10 (e.g., typical depths to aquifers, confined or unconfined aquifers, aquifer thicknesses, and aquifer
11 continuity). The EPA should present more information regarding the vertical distance between surface-
12 water bodies and the target zones being fractured, and the depths of most aquifers compared to the
13 depths of most hydraulically fractured wells. The EPA should include text to describe why the EPA
14 assessed certain HF-related topics and issues within the draft Assessment Report, and why certain
15 hydraulic fracturing topics, issues and activities were considered to be out of scope for this assessment.

16
17 It should be emphasized that the EPA-conducted research was integrated with a large amount of
18 additional information and research. The EPA should explicitly explain what it did in terms of its own
19 research in developing the assessment. The EPA should also discuss the temporal characteristics and
20 differences in temporal characteristics for the hydraulic fracturing water cycle stages in Chapter 2. In
21 addition, the EPA should assess whether there are aquifers that are particularly impacted by hydraulic
22 fracturing activities, and if so, provide quantifiable information on this topic within the draft Assessment
23 Report.

24 25 Water Acquisition Stage in the HFWC (Charge Question 2)

26
27 *The scope of the assessment was defined by the HFWC, which includes a series of activities*
28 *involving water that support hydraulic fracturing. The first stage in the HFWC is water*
29 *acquisition: the withdrawal of ground or surface water needed for hydraulic fracturing fluids.*
30 *This is addressed in Chapter 4.*

- 31 a. *Does the assessment accurately and clearly summarize the available information*
32 *concerning the sources and quantities of water used in hydraulic fracturing?*
- 33 b. *Are the quantities of water used and consumed in hydraulic fracturing accurately*
34 *characterized with respect to total water use and consumption at appropriate temporal*
35 *and spatial scales?*
- 36 c. *Are the major findings concerning water acquisition fully supported by the information*
37 *and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential*
38 *impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other*
39 *major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the*
40 *frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
- 41 d. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning water acquisition fully*
42 *and clearly described?*
- 43 e. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
44 *should be assessed to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water*
45 *resources from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that*
46 *should be added in this section of the report?*

1 The SAB was asked whether Chapter 4 of the draft Assessment Report comprehensively, accurately and
2 clearly summarized potential impacts associated with the water acquisition stage of the HFWC, whether
3 uncertainties and limitations were fully described, and whether additional information or topics should
4 be added. An enormous amount of available information about the quantities of water used in hydraulic
5 fracturing was synthesized in Chapter 4 of the draft Assessment Report. The EPA concludes Chapter 4
6 with a statement that the quantity of water withdrawn for hydraulic fracturing represents a small
7 proportion of freshwater usage at regional or state-wide levels. While the draft Assessment Report
8 comprehensively summarizes the available information concerning the sources and quantities of water
9 used from surface water, ground water, and treated wastewaters, the SAB finds that EPA’s statistical
10 extrapolation to describe average conditions at the national scale may mask important regional and local
11 differences in water acquisition impacts. Stresses to surface or ground water resources associated with
12 water acquisition and hydraulic fracturing are localized and temporary in time.

13
14 The SAB finds that water withdrawals for hydraulic fracturing can contribute significantly to
15 groundwater depletion, particularly in arid environments. Further, the SAB finds that water withdrawals
16 for hydraulic fracturing are capable of altering the flow regimes of streams, even in regions of rainfall
17 abundance, and that the potential for water availability impacts on drinking water resources is greatest in
18 areas with high hydraulic fracturing water use, low water availability, and frequent drought.

19
20 The SAB agrees there are important gaps and uncertainties in publicly available data on sources and
21 quantities of water used in hydraulic fracturing. At local scales, where the greatest impacts are most
22 likely to occur, reliable data are generally lacking. These gaps limit the understanding of potential
23 impacts of water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources. The agency should
24 synthesize information that is collected by the states but not available in mainstream databases, such as
25 well completion reports, permit applications and the associated water management plans. Such
26 additional, site-specific information would greatly aid in further assessing water use and cumulative
27 water withdrawals. Further, additional data from water management agencies could be synthesized to
28 better understand impacts at local spatial scales.

29
30 The SAB recommends that the EPA conduct further work to explore how hydraulic fracturing water
31 withdrawals affect short-term water availability at local scales, such as proposed in the prospective
32 studies that were in the EPA’s research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) but which were subsequently not
33 conducted. The EPA should enhance the understanding of localized impacts by providing more focus
34 and analysis on the Well File Review and on examination of other information not in literature and
35 common databases in order to provide more new information about actual hydraulic fracturing water
36 acquisition and its relationship to drinking water.

37 The lack of prospective case studies as originally planned by the EPA and described in the research
38 Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) is a major limitation of the draft Assessment Report. Such studies would
39 allow the EPA to monitor water acquisition and its effects to a level of detail not practiced by industry or
40 required by state regulation. These detailed new data would allow the EPA to reduce current
41 uncertainties and research gaps about the relation between hydraulic fracturing water acquisition and
42 drinking water. The EPA should continue research on expanded case studies and long-term prospective
43 studies.

44 There are several additional major findings that the EPA should identify within this chapter. First, it
45 should be more clearly noted that the stresses on water resources are expected to be local and temporary,
46 and the EPA should not understate the potential for localized problems associated with such stresses.

1 Second, the EPA should consider further exploring and describing how water acquisition and associated
2 potential impacts on lowered streamflow and water table drawdown could affect the quality of drinking
3 water. Third, the EPA the draft Assessment Report should present recent findings about the evolution of
4 technologies to improve water re-use.

5
6 Chemical Mixing Stage in the HFWC (Charge Question 3)
7

8 *The second stage in the HFWC is chemical mixing: the mixing of water, chemicals, and proppant*
9 *on the well pad to create the hydraulic fracturing fluid. This is addressed in Chapter 5.*

- 10 a. *Does the assessment accurately and clearly summarize the available information concerning*
11 *the composition, volume, and management of the chemicals used to create hydraulic*
12 *fracturing fluids?*
13 b. *Are the major findings concerning chemical mixing fully supported by the information and*
14 *data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to*
15 *drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other major findings that*
16 *have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any*
17 *impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
18 c. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical mixing fully and*
19 *clearly described?*
20 d. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
21 *should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources*
22 *from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be*
23 *added in this section of the report?*
24

25 The SAB was asked whether Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment Report comprehensively, accurately and
26 clearly summarized potential impacts associated with the chemical mixing stage of the HFWC, whether
27 uncertainties and limitations were fully described, and whether additional information or topics should
28 be added. The chemical mixing stage of the HFWC, addressed in Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment
29 Report, includes a series of above-ground, engineered processes involving complex hydraulic fracturing
30 fluid pumping and mixing operations, and the potential failure of these processes, including near-site
31 containment, poses a potentially significant risk to drinking water supplies. The SAB finds that the data
32 presented by the EPA within this chapter indicates that spills occur at hydraulic fracturing sites; that
33 there are varying causes, composition, frequency, volume, and severity of such spills; and that little is
34 known about specific hydraulic fracturing chemicals and their safety and efficacy. While the EPA
35 conducted a large effort in developing this chapter, the SAB is concerned that two fundamental,
36 underlying questions have not been answered: (1) What is the potential that spills that occur during the
37 ‘chemical mixing’ process affect drinking water supplies? and (2) What are the relevant concerns
38 associated with the degree to which these spills impact drinking water supplies? The SAB is also
39 concerned that the EPA’s major finding “None of the spills of hydraulic fracturing fluid were reported to
40 have reached ground water” is supported only by an absence of evidence rather than by evidence of
41 absence of impact.
42

43 There are three major findings that the EPA should present in this chapter of the draft Assessment
44 Report:

- 45 (1) There is significant uncertainty regarding which hydraulic fracturing chemicals are currently
46 in use.

1 (2) There is significant uncertainty regarding the identity of chemicals used in particular
2 hydraulic fracturing operations, and this uncertainty is compounded by limited knowledge about on-site
3 hydraulic fracturing chemical stockpiles.

4 (3) There is significant uncertainty regarding the frequency, severity, and type of hydraulic
5 fracturing-related spills.

6
7 Chapter 5, as it stands, provides little knowledge of the magnitude of hydraulic fracturing spills and it
8 does not adequately describe either the uncertainty or the lack of understanding of such spills. The SAB
9 notes that the EPA’s estimates on the frequency of on-site spills were based upon information from two
10 states, and expresses concern that these estimates cannot be confidently extrapolated across the entire
11 U.S. based on such limited data. The SAB finds that the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations
12 concerning chemical mixing are not fully and clearly described, and that data limitations compromise
13 the ability to develop definitive, quantitative conclusions within the draft Assessment Report regarding
14 the frequency and severity of spilled liquids. The SAB also concludes that the retrospective case studies
15 that are reported in the draft Assessment Report do not provide sufficient clarity on the potential severity
16 of spilled liquids. The EPA provided incomplete data on chemical mixing process spill frequency and
17 the potential severity of effects of such spills on drinking water resources. The SAB also finds that the
18 EPA’s interpretation of these limited data in its conclusion that the risk to drinking water supplies from
19 this stage of the HFWC is not substantial is not supported or linked to data presented in the body of the
20 draft Assessment Report, and the EPA should revise this interpretation of these limited data.

21
22 The SAB recommends that the EPA revise its assessments associated with the chemical mixing stage of
23 the HFWC to address these concerns. The agency should:

- 24 • Revise Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment Report to provide more information regarding the
25 extent or potential extent of the effects of chemical mixing processes from hydraulic fracturing
26 operations to drinking water supplies.
- 27 • Gather data and reference information regarding the efficiency of different mixing steps and
28 delivery from mixing and delivery operations that are common and employed in other
29 industries.
- 30 • Include a more thorough presentation and explanation of the frequency and types of data that the
31 hydraulic fracturing industry reports, some of which may not be readily accessible (i.e., not in
32 electronic format that is ‘searchable’), within the draft Assessment Report.
- 33 • Provide improved analysis on the current state of data reporting on spills and the nature of
34 hydraulic fracturing fluids.
- 35 • Define severity and impact in a way that is amenable to quantitative analysis and clearly
36 delineate those factors contributing to spill severity within the draft Assessment Report.
- 37 • Investigate at least one state as a detailed example for scrutinizing the available spill data (since
38 a number of states have spill reporting requirements and processes).
- 39 • Utilize existing substantial databases from analogous operations to critically ‘rank’ the
40 likelihood of hydraulic fracturing mixing and delivery operations for failure leading to spills
41 (since the SAB agrees that the types of industrial processes used during hydraulic fracturing
42 ‘mixing’ and delivery operations are not unique to hydraulic fracturing).

1 Well Injection Stage in the HFWC (Charge Question 4)
2

3 *The third stage in the HFWC is well injection: the injection of hydraulic fracturing fluids into the*
4 *well to enhance oil and gas production from the geologic formation by creating new fractures*
5 *and dilating existing fractures. This is addressed in Chapter 6.*

- 6 a. *Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information*
7 *concerning well injection, including well construction and well integrity issues and the*
8 *movement of hydraulic fracturing fluids, and other materials in the subsurface?*
9 b. *Are the major findings concerning well injection fully supported by the information and*
10 *data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential impacts*
11 *to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other major*
12 *findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or*
13 *severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
14 c. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning well injection fully and*
15 *clearly described?*
16 d. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
17 *should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water*
18 *resources from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that*
19 *should be added in this section of the report?*

20 The SAB was asked whether Chapter 6 of the draft Assessment Report comprehensively, accurately and
21 clearly summarized potential impacts associated with the well injection stage of the HFWC, whether
22 uncertainties and limitations were fully described, and whether additional information or topics should
23 be added. The hydraulic fracturing well injection stage of the HFWC is described in Chapter 6 of the
24 draft Assessment Report. The well injection stage has an important role in the HFWC's potential
25 influence on drinking water resources. The chapter covers a wide range of topics and raises many
26 potential issues regarding the potential effects of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources. While
27 Chapter 6 provides a comprehensive overview of the well injection stage in the HFWC, the chapter is
28 very densely written and is potentially inaccessible to the nontechnical reader. The SAB recommends
29 that the EPA include additional, clearer diagrams and illustrations in this chapter to help the general
30 public better understand the concepts and the most significant failure scenarios and mechanisms
31 regarding this stage in the HFWC. The EPA should also include discussions of new technologies and
32 state standards and regulations that have improved hydraulic fracturing operations.
33

34 Chapter 6 provides a comprehensive list of possible hydraulic fracturing-related failure scenarios and
35 mechanisms related to this stage in the HFWC. The draft Assessment Report should not make definitive
36 statements regarding whether some or all hydraulic fracturing wells are or are not leaking because the
37 chapter's conclusions regarding how many hydraulic fracturing wells are or are not leaking are not well
38 supported by analyses or other information presented. Before drawing conclusions on water quality
39 impacts associated with this HFWC step, the EPA should:

- 40 • More clearly describe the probability, risk, and relative significance of potential hydraulic
41 fracturing-related failure mechanisms, and the frequency of occurrence and most likely
42 magnitude and/or probability of risk of water quality impacts, associated with this stage in the
43 HFWC.
44 • Include a discussion of recent state hydraulic fracturing well design standards, required
45 mechanical integrity testing in wells, new technologies and fracture fluid mixes, and state

1 regulatory standards that have changed the probability of risk of water quality impacts associated
2 with this stage in the HFWC.

- 3 • Include an analysis and discussion on low frequency, high severity hydraulic fracturing case
4 studies and example situations.

5
6 Important lessons from carbon capture and storage studies, such as those conducted under the U.S.
7 Department of Energy (DOE), have shown that well construction and integrity issues are a primary
8 concern with potential releases of chemicals into the environment associated with subsurface storage.
9 The SAB notes that these carbon capture and storage studies have relevance to assessments regarding
10 potential releases from hydraulic fracturing activities. The SAB recommends that the agency examine
11 DOE data and reports on risks of geological storage of CO₂ to water resources and include relevant
12 information in the Assessment Report.

13
14 The SAB also recommends that the agency include and explain the status, data on potential releases, and
15 findings if available for the EPA and state investigations conducted in Dimock, Pennsylvania, Pavillion,
16 Wyoming, and Parker County, Texas where hydraulic fracturing activities are perceived by many
17 members of the public to have caused impacts to drinking water resources. Examination of these high-
18 visibility cases is important so that the public can understand the status of investigations in these areas,
19 conclusions associated with the investigations, lessons learned for hydraulic fracturing practice if any,
20 plans for remediation if any, and the degree to which information from these case studies can be
21 extrapolated to other locations.

22
23 In the descriptions of the models for fracture propagation and fluid migration introduced and discussed
24 in this chapter, the EPA should clarify that these model predictions and results are not evidence, and
25 clearly describe the limitations of such models.

26
27 The draft Assessment Report should include some discussion about what is known regarding induced
28 seismicity and impacts on drinking water resources associated with hydraulic fracturing activity.
29 Induced seismicity from well injection for hydraulic fracturing should be distinguished from induced
30 seismicity associated with hydraulic fracturing wastewater disposal via Class II deepwell injection.
31 Detailed discussion of induced seismicity from wastewater disposal should be reserved for Chapter 8 on
32 which is focused on wastewater treatment and disposal.

33
34 A key aspect of reducing impacts from hydraulic fracturing operations to drinking water supplies is
35 responsible well construction and operation, and isolation of potable water from hydraulic fracturing
36 operations. To accomplish this, the agency should recognize in the draft Assessment Report that the
37 following activities are required: inspection, testing and monitoring of the tubing, tubing-casing annulus
38 and other casing annuli; and monitoring and testing of the potable groundwater through which the
39 tubing, tubing-casing annulus and other casing annuli pass. The SAB also notes that the EPA can reduce
40 uncertainties associated with hydraulic fracturing cement and casing integrity by examining and
41 assessing more or all of the 20,000 well files referenced in the draft Assessment Report. The SAB also
42 recommends that the EPA conduct full statistical analyses on such an expanded Well File Review, and
43 include graphs or tables associated with such analyses into the draft Assessment Report.

44
45 The conclusory discussion in Chapter 6 notes that fractures created during hydraulic fracturing can
46 extend out of the target production zone and upwardly migrate. The EPA should delete these

1 conclusions from the draft Assessment Report unless the EPA supports these statements with data or
2 modeling.

3
4 Flowback and Produced Water Stage in the HFWC (Charge Question 5)

5
6 *The fourth stage in the HFWC focuses on flowback and produced water: the return of injected*
7 *fluid and water produced from the formation to the surface and subsequent transport for reuse,*
8 *treatment, or disposal. This is addressed in Chapter 7.*

- 9
10 a. *Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information*
11 *concerning the composition, volume, and management of flowback and produced waters?*
12 b. *Are the major findings concerning flowback and produced water fully supported by the*
13 *information and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the*
14 *potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there*
15 *other major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the*
16 *frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
17 c. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning flowback and produced*
18 *water fully and clearly described?*
19 d. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
20 *should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water*
21 *resources from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that*
22 *should be added in this section of the report?*

23 The SAB was asked whether Chapter 7 of the draft Assessment Report comprehensively, accurately and
24 clearly summarized potential impacts associated with the flowback and produced water stage of the
25 HFWC, whether uncertainties and limitations were fully described, and whether additional information
26 or topics should be added. Overall, the discussion on hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water
27 within Chapter 7 of the draft Assessment Report provides a clear and accurate summary of the available
28 information concerning composition, volume, and management of flowback and produced waters.
29 Chapter 7 also provides an overview of fate and transport of spilled liquids and the various components
30 necessary to evaluate migration of a spill (i.e., amount of material released, timing of the release,
31 response efforts, timing of response measures, soils, geology, and receptors).

32
33 However, the EPA should provide additional detail describing the extent and duration of the impacts of
34 spilled liquids and releases of flowback and produced waters when they occur, and conduct various
35 activities including those described below to reduce uncertainties associated with conclusions regarding
36 such impacts:

- 37
38 • While Chapter 7 summarizes many types of incidents regarding the management of flowback
39 and produced waters and refers to case studies that describe leaks and spills, the chapter should
40 provide additional detail describing the extent and duration of the impacts associated with these
41 incidents, including details on the impact of spilled liquids and releases when they occur. To
42 understand the likely probability of these events, Chapter 7 should quantify in text and in a figure
43 the frequency of the different types of release events, including whether the spilled material
44 impacts groundwater or surface water.
45 • While the major findings on hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water presented in
46 Section 10.1.4 of the draft Assessment Report are supported by the analysis presented in Chapter
47 7, the major findings should be more explicitly quantified and clearly identified within the
chapter.

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23
- 24
- 25
- 26
- 27
- 28
- 29
- 30
- 31
- 32
- 33
- 34
- 35
- 36
- 37
- 38
- 39
- 40
- 41
- 42
- 43
- 44
- 45
- 46
- 47
- The EPA should include an additional major finding that: (a) large severe hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water-related contaminant release incidents such as blowouts, and smaller common incidents (usually containment leaks), may cause effects on drinking water resources on a volume basis; and (b) blowouts are more severe in terms of impact due to the high-volume, short-duration characteristics of the release.
 - The EPA should discuss what happens to un-recovered fracture fluids that are injected into hydraulic fracturing wells, and assess where these fluids go if they do not come back to the surface.
 - Chapter 7 emphasizes the horizontal and vertical distance between spill and receptor without adequately indicating that certain subsurface geologic conditions and hydraulic gradient scenarios in the shallow subsurface can allow spilled liquids to migrate a considerable distance from the point of release. While such long-distance travel incidents have only been rarely reported, the draft Assessment Report should describe the frequency and severity of such events and recognize that such events occur.
 - While data gaps have been identified in Chapter 7, especially with respect to baseline conditions and individual incidents, the EPA should clarify whether there are data gaps because the data are non-existent or just not easily (i.e., electronically) available.
 - The EPA should also include additional analysis and discussion on how recycled hydraulic fracturing produced water that is reused onsite at hydraulic fracturing facilities without treatment might affect the severity or frequency of potential contamination of surrounding drinking water resources.
 - The EPA should significantly expand and clarify the discussion provided in Chapter 7 on the use by industry of tracers for injection fluids, as well as the efforts made by the EPA to develop tracers, and describe how tracers might be an approach that could allow assessment of releases of contamination and interpretation of the source of contamination if it occurs. The agency should summarize what compounds or metals are used currently for chemical and radioactive tracers, the degree to which tracers are used, where tracers are used, what concentrations are in use, and what concentrations are measured for these tracers in the flowback or produced waters.
 - Regarding compounds of concern in flowback and produced waters:
 - The agency should clarify whether compounds identified as being of most concern in produced water are products of the hydraulic fracturing activity, flowback, or late-stage produced water, or are chemicals of concern derived from oil and gas production activities that are unrelated to hydraulic fracturing activity.
 - The SAB recommends that the EPA should analyze flowback water for organic compounds, since Flowback water composition data are limited and the majority of available data are for inorganics.
 - The EPA should present additional information on changes in flowback and produced waters chemistry over time.
 - The EPA should include more information and discussion in Chapter 7 regarding radionuclides associated with hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water (including the Pennsylvania Department of Environmental Protection research on this topic), bromide concentrations in hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water and wastes and in surface waters, best management practices (BMPs) for hydraulic fracturing surface impoundments, and the natural occurrence of brines in the subsurface.
 - The EPA should also include additional discussion on background and pre-existing baseline chemistry of surface and groundwater in order to better understand the impacts associated with flowback and produced water.

1
2 Wastewater Treatment and Waste Disposal Stage in the HFWC (Charge Question 6)
3

4 *The fifth stage in the HFWC focuses on wastewater treatment and waste disposal: the reuse,*
5 *treatment and release, or disposal of wastewater generated at the well pad. This is addressed in*
6 *Chapter 8.*

- 7 a. *Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning*
8 *hydraulic fracturing wastewater management, treatment, and disposal?*
9 b. *Are the major findings concerning wastewater treatment and disposal fully supported by the*
10 *information and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the*
11 *potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other*
12 *major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency*
13 *or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
14 c. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning wastewater treatment and*
15 *waste disposal fully and clearly described?*
16 d. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
17 *should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources*
18 *from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be*
19 *added in this section of the report?*

20 The SAB was asked whether Chapter 8 of the draft Assessment Report comprehensively, accurately and
21 clearly summarized potential impacts associated with the wastewater treatment and waste disposal stage
22 of the HFWC, whether uncertainties and limitations were fully described, and whether additional
23 information or topics should be added. Overall, Chapter 8 clearly and accurately summarizes a large
24 amount of existing information on the rapidly evolving topic of treatment, reuse, and disposal of
25 wastewater associated with hydraulic fracturing, and recognizes the significant data and information
26 gaps associated with this stage of the HFWC. The chapter's summary of water quality characteristics of
27 wastewaters from various sites clearly indicates that spills or discharges of inadequately treated
28 wastewater could potentially result in significant adverse impacts on drinking water quality.
29

30 While Chapter 8 adequately summarizes many aspects related to hydraulic fracturing wastewater
31 treatment based upon literature analysis, it provides little new or original findings – such as those
32 anticipated based on the EPA's November 2011 final Hydraulic Fracturing Research Study Plan. (U.S.
33 EPA, 2011), and has other limitations. The chapter does not adequately address the potential frequency
34 and severity of impacts of hydraulic fracturing wastewaters on drinking water quality, nor potential
35 scenarios in the near future that could influence such impacts (e.g., reduced access to deep well injection
36 due to restrictions associated with seismic activity). In addition, the major findings concerning
37 wastewater treatment and disposal, including the conclusion in the chapter that "*there is no evidence*
38 *that these contaminants have affected drinking water facilities,*" are not fully supported by the
39 information and data presented in Chapter 8, and Chapter 8 should clearly and accurately describe the
40 basis for this statement. To address these concerns, the EPA should conduct further analyses and
41 activities, including the following:

- 42 • The EPA should more clearly describe the potential frequency and severity of impacts associated
43 with this stage in the HFWC, before drawing conclusions on water quality impacts associated
44 with this HFWC step.
45 • The EPA should further assess how deep well injection siting proximity to production wells,
46 water intakes and water supply wells may influence potential impacts on drinking water quality.

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

- 1 • The EPA should further assess potential impacts on public drinking water supplies that rely upon
2 intakes from surface waters located in watersheds downstream of hydraulic fracturing activities
3 or discharges of hydraulic fracturing wastewaters.
- 4 • The chapter describes unit processes used in centralized water treatment facilities (CWTFs), but
5 many of these descriptions are very general and sometimes incorrectly describe such unit
6 processes; the chapter should be revised to address this issue.
- 7 • Chapter 8 should further consider temporal trends or costs of hydraulic fracturing water
8 purification technologies over the past decade, trends in wastewater disposal methods including
9 the scientific and economic drivers of these changes and their potential impacts on drinking
10 water resources, and potential future trajectories associated with these trends (e.g., if deep well
11 injection of wastewater is reduced because of regulatory changes).
- 12 • The chapter should clearly summarize the regulatory framework around CWTFs and publicly
13 owned treatment works (POTWs) receiving wastewater discharges associated with hydraulic
14 fracturing-related oil and gas production.
- 15 • While the chapter notes that treated hydraulic fracturing wastewater discharges can increase
16 formation of brominated and iodinated disinfection by-products (DBPs) at downstream drinking
17 water treatment plants, Chapter 8 should also discuss other DBPs that could form at downstream
18 water treatment plants (and water resource reclamation facilities) impacted by wastewater
19 discharges associated with hydraulic fracturing.
- 20 • Chapter 8 should be revised to adequately describe the composition and disposal methods of
21 residuals from CWTFs (including residuals from zero-liquid discharge facilities), and whether
22 and to what extent those residuals may impact drinking water sources now and in the future.
- 23 • The chapter does not adequately assess other waste disposal issues such as disposal of cuttings
24 and drilling muds and disposal of residuals from drinking water treatment plants and POTWs
25 impacted by wastewater discharges associated with hydraulic fracturing, and disposal of soils,
26 pond sediments, and other solid media contaminated by hydraulic fracturing chemicals; the
27 chapter should be revised to include assessment on these topics.
- 28 • Chapter 8 should clearly and accurately summarize available information regarding the potential
29 impacts of pollutant concentrations in certain water reuse applications.
- 30 • Chapter 8 should also describe the potential impacts of induced seismicity associated with
31 hydraulic fracturing wastewater disposal activity on water quality and drinking water resources,
32 and on oil and gas production and public water supply infrastructure (e.g., damage to wells,
33 storage vessels, and pipelines transporting water and wastewater).
- 34
- 35

1 Chemicals Used or Present in Hydraulic Fracturing Fluids (Charge Question 7)
2

3 *The assessment used available information and data to identify chemicals used in hydraulic*
4 *fracturing fluids and/or present in flowback and produced waters. Known physicochemical and*
5 *toxicological properties of those chemicals were compiled and summarized. This is addressed in*
6 *Chapter 9.*

- 7 a. *Does the assessment present a clear and accurate characterization of the available chemical and*
8 *toxicological information concerning chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing?*
9 b. *Does the assessment clearly identify and describe the constituents of concern that potentially*
10 *impact drinking water resources?*
11 c. *Are the major findings fully supported by the information and data presented in the assessment?*
12 *Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the*
13 *frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
14 d. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical and toxicological*
15 *properties fully and clearly described?*
16 e. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should*
17 *be assessed, to better characterize chemical and toxicological information in this assessment?*
18 *Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?*

19 The SAB was asked whether Chapter 9 of the draft Assessment Report comprehensively, accurately and
20 clearly summarized available chemical and toxicological information concerning chemicals used in the
21 HFWC, whether uncertainties and limitations were fully described, and whether additional information
22 or topics should be added. The EPA clearly articulates its approach for characterizing the available
23 physicochemical and toxicological information. However, Chapter 9 of the draft Assessment Report
24 should characterize toxicological information on chemicals employed in hydraulic fracturing in an
25 inclusive manner, and not restrict the criteria for selection of hydraulic fracturing chemicals of concern
26 to solely chemicals that have formal noncancer oral reference values (RfVs) and cancer oral slope
27 factors (OSFs). The agency should use a broad range of toxicity data, including information pertinent to
28 subchronic exposures, from a number of reliable sources, in expanding the criterion for hydraulic
29 fracturing chemicals of concern. As the EPA broadens inclusion of toxicology information to populate
30 missing toxicity data, the EPA can expand the tiered hierarchy of data described in the EPA report to
31 give higher priority to chemicals with RfVs without excluding other quality toxicology information that
32 is useful for risk assessment purposes.

33
34 The draft Assessment Report should explicitly indicate what fraction of the compounds identified in
35 hydraulic fracturing fluid and/or produced waters have some hazard information (e.g., any governmental
36 reviewed toxicity data used for risk assessment), and what fraction have no available information. In
37 addition, the EPA should summarize potential hazards from methane (physical hazard), bromide-related
38 disinfection by-products formed in drinking water, and naturally occurring materials (e.g. metals,
39 radionuclides) in hydraulic fracturing wastewater that were discussed in earlier chapters. An important
40 limitation of the EPA's hazard evaluation of chemicals across the HFWC is the agency's lack of breadth
41 in its analysis of most likely exposure scenarios and hazards associated with hydraulic fracturing
42 activities. The agency should identify the most likely exposure scenarios and hazards in order to obtain
43 toxicity information relevant to particular situations.

44
45 The EPA uses FracFocus 1.0 as the primary source of information on the identity and frequency of use
46 of chemicals in hydraulic fracturing processes. The SAB expresses concern that the FracFocus database

1 may not be complete because it is voluntary and does not include some important information because
2 of its proprietary nature on the identity, properties, frequency of use, magnitude of exposure, and
3 toxicity potential for approximately 11% of hydraulic fracturing chemicals that are considered
4 confidential business information (EPA draft report, p 5-73). Although the agency acknowledged
5 limitations of the FracFocus data, the EPA can do more to address them by characterizing in some way
6 the toxicology data on proprietary compounds that the EPA may have, and by using information
7 provided in FracFocus on chemical class and concentration (% mass of hydraulic fracturing fluid).
8 Based on this information, the agency should clearly describe and assess how gaps in knowledge about
9 proprietary compounds affect the uncertainty regarding conclusions that can be drawn on impacts of
10 hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources. As the FracFocus data that the agency assessed was
11 current up to February 2013, the SAB also recommends that the draft Assessment Report include data
12 from more recent versions of FracFocus. Absent additional information, it is not feasible to conclude
13 which constituents—each differing in occurrence, concentration, and volume during the various phases
14 of hydraulic fracturing gas and oil extraction—are of greatest concern. Additional field studies should be
15 given a high priority in order to better understand the intensity and duration of exposures to constituents
16 of flowback and produced water.

17
18 In addition, the EPA should identify the most likely exposure pathways for impacting drinking water
19 resources based on consideration of findings in prospective and retrospective investigations, as well as
20 case studies of private wells and surface water impacted by spills, blowback and storage/treatment of
21 waste water.

22
23 The SAB commends the EPA for formulating a conceptual approach for assessment of the scope and
24 potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing on national drinking water resources when there is limited data
25 on exposure (e.g. concentration, volume and duration in different parts of the water cycle) While SAB
26 agrees in principle that toxicological and physicochemical information could approximate exposure and
27 hazard potential, the SAB does not agree with specific elements and limited selection of data illustrating
28 the MCDA approach. The MCDA outlined by the EPA gives equal weight to information on
29 physicochemical scores, occurrence and toxicity. This may place undue emphasis on physicochemical
30 score. While useful in judging a chemical's likelihood of occurrence in drinking water, this value may
31 be a relatively poor surrogate for actual exposure. Compounds may not be addressed that tend to remain
32 at their original deposition site and serve as a reservoir for prolonged release. In light of the limitations
33 described above and in the SAB's response to Charge Question 7a (e.g., the EPA limited toxicology
34 information to government reviewed reference values), and given that the EPA applied this approach to
35 only 37 chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing fluids and 23 chemicals detected in flowback or produced
36 water, the EPA's MCDA results should be considered for preliminary hazard evaluation purposes only,
37 as the EPA originally intended. In addition, the agency should suggest use of an MCDA approach on a
38 regional or site-specific basis where more complete constituent identity, concentrations and toxicity
39 information is available for the specific case being analyzed.

40 The EPA should carefully distinguish between hydraulic fracturing chemicals injected into a hydraulic
41 fracturing well vs. chemicals and hydrocarbons that come back out of the hydraulic fracturing well in
42 produced fluids. The SAB suggests that if no chemicals are added to a hydraulic fracturing well, there is
43 still a potential for impacts to drinking water resources from compounds present naturally in the
44 subsurface and present in produced water. In Chapter 9 and throughout the draft Assessment Report,
45 chemical constituents and potential impacts unique to hydraulic fracturing oil and gas extraction should
46 be clearly distinguished from those that also exist as a component of conventional oil and gas

1 development. The agency should clarify whether compounds identified as being of most concern in
2 produced water are products of the hydraulic fracturing activity, flowback, or late-stage produced water,
3 or are chemicals of concern derived from oil and gas production activities that are unrelated to hydraulic
4 fracturing activity.

5
6 Synthesis of Science on Potential Impacts of Hydraulic Fracturing on Drinking Water Resources, and
7 Executive Summary (Charge Question 8)
8

9 *The Executive Summary and Chapter 10 provide a synthesis of the information in this assessment. In*
10 *particular, the Executive Summary was written for a broad audience.*

- 11 a. *Are the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 clearly written and logically organized?*
12 b. *Does the Executive Summary clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the major findings*
13 *of the assessment for a broad audience, consistent with the body of the report?*
14 c. *In Chapter 10, have interrelationships and major findings for the major stages of the HFWC*
15 *been adequately explored and identified? Are there other major findings that have not been*
16 *brought forward?*
17 d. *Are there sections in Chapter 10 that should be expanded? Or additional information added?*

18 The SAB was asked whether the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 of the draft Assessment Report
19 comprehensively, accurately and clearly synthesized information and described major findings in the
20 assessment, and explored and identified interrelationships between stages of the HFWC. The SAB was
21 also asked whether additional information or topics should be added. The EPA should significantly
22 modify the form and content of the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 Synthesis of the draft
23 Assessment Report. The Executive Summary is unlikely to be understandable by a large segment of its
24 readership, and should be revised to make this section more suitable for a broad audience. Clearer
25 statements are needed on the goals and scope of the assessment and on specific descriptions of hydraulic
26 fracturing activities, and additional diagrams and illustrations should be provided to enhance the public's
27 understanding of hydraulic fracturing activities and operations. Technical terms should be used
28 sparingly and should always be defined, and graphics should be introduced to illustrate and clarify key
29 concepts and processes.

30
31 Several major findings presented in both the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 Synthesis are
32 ambiguous and require clarification, and/or are inconsistent with observations presented in the body of
33 the Report. These major findings include:

- 34 • *“We did not find evidence that these mechanisms have led to widespread, systemic impacts on*
35 *drinking water resources in the United States.”*
36 • *“High fracturing water use or consumption alone does not necessarily result in impacts to*
37 *drinking water resources.”*
38 • *“None of the spills of hydraulic fracturing fluid were reported to have reached ground water.”*
39 • *“The number of identified cases, however, was small compared to the number of hydraulically*
40 *fractured wells.”*
41 • *“According to the data examined, the overall frequency of occurrence [of hydraulically fractured*
42 *geologic units that also serve as a drinking water sources] appears to be low...”*
43 • *“Chronic releases can and do occur from produced water stored in unlined pits or*
44 *impoundments, and can have long-term impacts.”*
45

1 The SAB is concerned that these major findings do not clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the
2 findings developed in the chapters of the draft Assessment Report, and that the EPA has not adequately
3 supported these major findings with data or analysis from within the body of the draft Assessment
4 Report. Of particular concern in this regard is the high-level conclusion statement on page ES-6 that
5 “We did not find evidence that hydraulic fracturing mechanisms have led to widespread, systemic
6 impacts on drinking water resources in the United States.” The SAB finds that this statement does not
7 clearly describe the system(s) of interest (e.g., groundwater, surface water) nor the definitions of
8 “systemic,” “widespread,” or “impacts.” The SAB is also concerned that this statement does not reflect
9 the uncertainties and data limitations described in the body of the Report associated with such impacts.
10 The statement is ambiguous and requires clarification and additional explanation.

11
12 The agency should strengthen the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 Synthesis by linking the stated
13 findings more directly to evidence presented in the body of the draft Assessment Report. The EPA
14 should more precisely describe each of the major findings of the draft Assessment Report in both the
15 Executive Summary and Chapter 10 Synthesis, and provide a full accounting of all available
16 information, including specific cases of drinking water impacts, that relate to these major findings.

17
18 The agency should modify the Chapter 10 Synthesis discussion on major findings to not simply present
19 a summary of findings from Chapters 4-9 of the draft Assessment Report but rather to present integrated
20 conclusions, including identification of those hydraulic fracturing practices demonstrated to be effective
21 in safeguarding drinking water resources. The EPA should also discuss research needs and steps that
22 could be taken to reduce uncertainties related to the HFWC within the Chapter 10 Synthesis.

23
24 The Executive Summary focuses on national- and regional-level generalizations of the potential effects
25 of hydraulic fracturing-related activities on drinking water resources. Although these generalizations are
26 often desirable and useful, the EPA should make these conclusions cautiously, and clearly qualify these
27 conclusions through acknowledgement of the substantial heterogeneity existing in both natural and
28 engineered systems. Furthermore, the EPA should provide more emphasis in the Executive Summary on
29 the importance of local hydraulic fracturing impacts. These local-level hydraulic fracturing impacts may
30 occur infrequently, but they can be severe and the Executive Summary should more clearly describe
31 such impacts.

32
33 The draft Assessment Report should also identify needs for future research, assessment and field studies,
34 and include in that discussion the EPA’s plans for conducting prospective studies and other research that
35 the EPA had planned to conduct but did not conduct.

36
37

2. INTRODUCTION

2.1. Background

In its Fiscal Year 2010 Appropriation Conference Committee Directive to the EPA, the U.S. House of Representatives urged the agency to conduct a study of hydraulic fracturing and its relationship to drinking water, specifically:

“The conferees urge the Agency to carry out a study on the relationship between hydraulic fracturing and drinking water, using a credible approach that relies on the best available science, as well as independent sources of information. The conferees expect the study to be conducted through a transparent, peer-reviewed process that will ensure the validity and accuracy of the data. The Agency shall consult with other Federal agencies as well as appropriate State and interstate regulatory agencies in carrying out the study, which should be prepared in accordance with the Agency's quality assurance principles.”

Hydraulic fracturing (HF) is a well stimulation technique used by gas producers to explore and produce natural gas from sources such as coalbed methane and shale gas formations. The gas extraction process includes: site exploration, selection and preparation; equipment mobilization-demobilization; well construction and development; mixing and injecting fracturing fluids; hydraulic fracturing of the formation; produced water and waste management, transport, treatment, and/or disposal; gas production (infrastructure for storage and transportation); and site closure.

In June 2015, the EPA’s Office of Research and Development (ORD) released a draft assessment report (U.S. EPA, 2015), entitled *Assessment of the Potential Impacts of Hydraulic Fracturing for Oil and Gas on Drinking Water Resources*. ORD requested the EPA SAB conduct a peer review of the EPA’s draft Assessment report through which the SAB would develop an advisory report of consensus advice for the EPA Administrator.

The draft Assessment Report synthesizes available scientific literature and data on the potential for hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas to change the quality or quantity of drinking water resources, and identifies factors affecting the frequency or severity of any potential changes. The draft Assessment Report follows the hydraulic fracturing water cycle (HFWC) described in the Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) and Progress Report (U.S. EPA, 2012). The HFWC includes five stages: (1) water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing fluids; (2) chemical mixing to form fracturing fluids; (3) well injection of fracturing fluids; (4) flowback and produced water; and (5) wastewater treatment and disposal. Potential impacts on drinking water resources are considered at each stage in this cycle.

2.2. SAB Review

In response to the U.S. Congress, the EPA developed a study scope (U.S. EPA, 2010) in March 2010 that was reviewed by the SAB Environmental Engineering Committee and additional members of the SAB in an open meeting on April 7-8, 2010. The SAB’s Report on its review of the study scope was provided to the Administrator in June 2010. In its response to the EPA in June 2010, the SAB endorsed a lifecycle approach for the research study plan (U.S. EPA, 2011), and recommended that: (1) initial research be focused on potential impacts to drinking water resources, with later research investigating more general impacts on water resources; (2) five to ten in-depth case studies be conducted at “locations

1 *selected to represent the full range of regional variability of hydraulic fracturing across the nation”*; and
2 (3) engagement with stakeholders occur throughout the research process (SAB, 2010).

3
4 EPA then developed a research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) that was reviewed by the SAB HF Panel in
5 an open meeting on March 7-8, 2011. In its response to the EPA in August 2011, the SAB found the
6 EPA’s approach for the research Study Plan to be appropriate and comprehensive, and concluded that
7 the EPA has identified the necessary tools in its overall research approach to assess potential impacts of
8 hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources (SAB, 2011). The EPA’s research Study Plan identified
9 specific potential outcomes for the research related to each step in the HFWC, and the SAB did not
10 anticipate that all of these outcomes could be achieved given the time and cost constraints of the
11 proposed research program. Further, the SAB identified several areas of the research Study Plan that
12 could be better focused and suggested several additional topics for further study.

13
14 In late 2012, the EPA released a Progress Report (U.S. EPA, 2012) on the study detailing the EPA’s
15 research approaches and next steps. Peer-review input on the Progress Report was provided through a
16 consultation with individual members of the SAB HF Panel convened under the auspices of the SAB in
17 an open meeting on May 7-8, 2013. At the May 2013 consultation meeting, ORD briefed the SAB HF
18 Panel on the current status of its research, and the SAB HF Panel members individually addressed 12
19 charge questions spanning each of the five components of the hydraulic fracturing lifecycle, including
20 water acquisition, chemical mixing, well injection, flowback and produced water, and wastewater
21 treatment and waste disposal. Members discussed the charge questions and also developed written
22 responses. The written comments of the individual experts on the SAB HF Panel were posted on the
23 SAB May 2013 meeting webpage.

24
25 On June 4, 2015, ORD released its draft Assessment Report and requested the EPA SAB to conduct a
26 peer review on the draft Assessment Report. On September 30, 2015, the SAB HF Panel conducted a
27 public teleconference to receive a briefing on the EPA’s draft Assessment Report and to discuss the
28 EPA’s charge questions. On October 28-30, 2015, the SAB HF Panel conducted an advisory meeting to
29 develop consensus advice in response to charge questions associated with the research described in the
30 EPA’s draft Assessment Report. The charge questions are listed below and in Appendix A.

31
32 The SAB HF Panel held a public teleconference call on December 3, 2015 to complete agenda items
33 from the October 28-30, 2015 SAB HF Panel meeting and further develop preliminary key points in
34 response to charge questions on the agency’s draft assessment. The SAB HF Panel then held a public
35 teleconference on February 1, 2012, to discuss substantive comments from SAB HF Panel members on
36 this draft SAB report. On a public teleconference on *[Insert Month/Year]*, the chartered SAB
37 deliberated on the SAB HF Panel’s draft report and *[Insert chartered SAB disposition of the draft*
38 *Panel Report]*.

39
40 The Executive Summary highlights the SAB’s major findings and recommendations. The SAB’s full
41 responses to the charge questions are detailed in Section 3.

3. RESPONSES TO THE EPA’S CHARGE QUESTIONS

3.1. Goals, Background and History of the Assessment

Question 1: The goal of the assessment was to review, analyze, and synthesize available data and information concerning the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources in the United States, including identifying factors affecting the frequency or severity of any potential impacts. In Chapter 1 of the assessment, are the goals, background, scope, approach, and intended use of this assessment clearly articulated? In Chapters 2 and 3, are the descriptions of hydraulic fracturing and drinking water resources clear and informative as background material? Are there topics that should be added to Chapters 2 and 3 to provide needed background for the assessment?

Chapter 1 provides an introductory section and a discussion on the background, scope, approach and organization of the draft Assessment Report. Chapter 2 provides a discussion on hydraulic fracturing, oil and gas production, and the U.S. energy sector. It defines hydraulic fracturing, discusses how widespread hydraulic fracturing is, and describes the trends and outlook for the future of hydraulic fracturing. Chapter 3 describes drinking water resources in the U.S., and discusses current and future drinking water resources and the proximity of drinking water resources to hydraulic fracturing activity.

3.1.1. Goals and Scope of the Assessment

In Chapter 1 of the assessment, are the goals, background, scope, approach, and intended use of this assessment clearly articulated?

Chapter 1 is well written, and introduces the background and intended use of the assessment clearly and understandably. However, it needs a clear and explicit statement of the goals and objectives of the assessment; a concise statement of the goals in nontechnical language will provide a coherent framework for the entire document. Chapter 1 also needs to better distinguish the goals from the approach. For instance, the review, synthesis, and analysis of scientific literature and information provided by stakeholders, and of research conducted, should be stated as part of the approach rather than a goal of the study.

It should be emphasized that the EPA-conducted research was integrated with a large amount of additional information and research. The EPA should explicitly explain what it did in terms of its own research in developing the assessment. The use of the EPA-sponsored research projects, technical input from agencies, industries, Non-Governmental Organizations (NGOs) and other stakeholders should be highlighted as part of the approach.

As stated on page 1-2 of the draft Assessment Report, the scope of the assessment is “defined by the HFWC” and it is desirably broad, in particular not limiting it solely to the actual hydraulic fracturing step. The EPA should include provide additional explanation of the rationale for its choice to use the HFWC to assess impacts of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources. The EPA should discuss in the draft Assessment Report whether all of the ways in which hydraulic fracturing and related activities might impact the quality or quantity of drinking water resources are associated with one of the five stages of the cycle. The EPA should include text to describe why the EPA assessed certain HF-related topics and issues within the draft Assessment Report, and why certain hydraulic fracturing topics, issues and activities were considered to be out of scope for this assessment. Also, the EPA should consistently

1 revise text throughout the draft Assessment Report when referring to hydraulic fracturing to note the
2 EPA is referring to the entire HFWC, consisting of the five stages defined in this assessment.

3
4 As noted in Chapter 1, the definition of the study scope was broad but not all inclusive, and some
5 aspects of oil and gas production are stated to be outside the scope of the draft Assessment Report.
6 However, the Chapter 1 statement about aspects of the report that are outside of the scope of the
7 assessment is not entirely consistent with the rest of the draft Assessment Report. For example,
8 hydraulic fracturing well closure is explicitly excluded in Chapter 1, and yet Chapter 2 contains a
9 section on “Site and Well Closure.” Also, hydraulic fracturing imposes unique stresses on well structure,
10 such as casing and cement, and hence well integrity, even post production, is within the scope (e.g.,
11 concerns about the integrity of inactive or orphaned wells are discussed in Chapter 6). The EPA should
12 correct these statements in Chapter 1 to be more inclusive of situations and analyses that the EPA did
13 include later in the draft Assessment Report.

14
15 The intended users of the draft Assessment Report range from policy makers and regulators to the
16 industry and the public; however, parts of Chapters 1-3 are overly technical for many of those users. The
17 technical details are important, and should not be diluted. The EPA should include illustrative material
18 (illustrations, diagrams, and charts) in these chapters so that non-technical readers have visuals to
19 facilitate understanding of this technical material. Where appropriate, the EPA should move some
20 technical details to an appendix of the draft Assessment Report, replaced by graphical material. The
21 SAB recognizes that many readers of the draft Assessment Report will read only the Introduction and
22 Executive Summary, and thus recommends that the EPA should not put all such details in appendices.

23
24 Much public interest in hydraulic fracturing in general and in this assessment in particular is generated
25 by experiences at individual sites. Chapter 1 should acknowledge the importance of these experiences,
26 and the needs associated with public outreach and education related to drinking water quality. The
27 Assessment Report should include (not necessarily with all detail in Chapter 1) explicit summaries of
28 studies that have been conducted in Dimock, Pennsylvania, Pavillion, Wyoming, and Parker County,
29 Texas, including the status of those studies and the currently responsible government bodies associated
30 with monitoring of hydraulic fracturing activities in these areas.

31
32 Chapter 1 should provide a general overview discussion of the relevant federal and state laws pertaining
33 to hydraulic fracturing activities for oil and gas development, and mechanisms for enforcement of the
34 laws with respect to protection of surface water quality, ground water quality, municipal water supplies,
35 and private wells. The overview should provide a description of organizations responsible for
36 monitoring and regulation of hydraulic fracturing-related activities.

37 **3.1.2. Descriptions of Hydraulic Fracturing and Drinking Water Resources**

38
39 *In Chapters 2 and 3, are the descriptions of hydraulic fracturing and drinking water resources clear and*
40 *informative as background material?*

41
42 The description of hydraulic fracturing in Chapter 2 is clear and informative. Regarding time scale, the
43 EPA should emphasize the relatively short time span of the actual hydraulic fracturing operation within
44 Chapter 2, and place this emphasis in perspective with the time frames of the other parts of the HFWC.
45 The section on site identification and well development should include some discussion noting that the
46 new geological source rock targets being produced by hydraulic fracturing and horizontal drilling

1 require closer well spacing that can have significantly greater potential impacts on drinking water
2 resources (Zoback, M.D., and D.J. Arent, 2014). In addition, the EPA should recognize in Chapter 2 that
3 some oil and gas resources being developed with the aid of hydraulic fracturing are located in close
4 proximity to populations.

5
6 The description of drinking water resources in Chapter 3 is informative and generally clear. However,
7 the chapter should include more description and depiction (including diagrams and photographs) of the
8 natural geologic framework into which the engineered hydraulic fracturing systems are implemented.
9 Chapter 3 should also include more discussion about potential issues associated with future hydraulic
10 fracturing water supplies and sources (e.g., the chapter should discuss potential issues associated with
11 the deeper aquifers in the West if such aquifers are considered potential future hydraulic fracturing water
12 sources).

13
14 The SAB is also concerned that parts of Chapters 2 and 3 are overly technical for many of the intended
15 users. While the technical details are important and should not be diluted, these chapters should include
16 illustrative material (illustrations, diagrams, and charts) so that non-technical readers have visuals to
17 facilitate understanding of this technical material. Where appropriate, the EPA should move some
18 technical details to an appendix, replaced by graphical material.

19 **3.1.3. Topics to be Added**

20
21 *Are there topics that should be added to Chapters 2 and 3 to provide needed background for the*
22 *assessment?*

23
24 The EPA should discuss the temporal characteristics and differences in temporal characteristics for the
25 HFWC stages in Chapter 2. In Section 3.2 of Chapter 3, references to “co-location” of hydraulic
26 fracturing with surface and ground water should be clarified. The EPA should also note that vertical and
27 horizontal separation may not be relevant to the propensity for an oil or gas formation to connect to
28 drinking water resources, and discuss situations when such separation would relate to such a connection.
29

30 Within Chapters 2 and 3, the EPA should also include discussions of new hydraulic fracturing
31 technologies, and standards and regulations that have improved hydraulic fracturing operations
32 associated with each stage of the HFWC.
33

34 Although aquifers are presented on the first page of Chapter 3 as part of the drinking water resources of
35 the United States, aquifers are only superficially mentioned in the body of the chapter. The EPA should
36 add more information regarding groundwater resources in hydraulically fractured areas (e.g., typical
37 depths to aquifers, confined or unconfined aquifers, aquifer thicknesses, and aquifer continuity). All of
38 this information is available from the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS, 1996; and USGS, 2000).
39

40 The draft Assessment Report should discuss the apparently arbitrary selection of a one mile radius to
41 define proximity of a drinking water resource to hydraulic fracturing operations, and the potential need
42 to consider drinking water resources at greater than one mile distance from a hydraulic fracturing
43 operation (e.g., in the case of undetected leakage from an impoundment and subsequent long-distance
44 transport in a transmissive subsurface feature). The EPA should present more information regarding the
45 vertical distance between surface-water bodies and the target zones being fractured, and the depths of
46 most aquifers compared to the depths of most hydraulically fractured wells.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14

The SAB also suggests that the EPA consider including discussions of the following topics in Chapter 3:

- A discussion highlighting communities experiencing water constraints that are or might be related to hydraulic fracturing activities in those regions;
- A high level discussion of population growth and future water needs by communities. The SAB notes that while such a discussion is not the focus of the report, future growth using general projections should be acknowledged as an important aspect of the potential impact of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources; and
- Whether there are aquifers that are particularly impacted by hydraulic fracturing activities, and if so, whether the EPA could include quantifiable information on this topic. The EPA should consider including maps of aquifers similar to the county-specific maps that the EPA provided within Chapter 3.

1 **3.2. Water Acquisition Stage in the HFWC**

2 *Question 2: The scope of the assessment was defined by the HFWC, which includes a series of activities*
3 *involving water that support hydraulic fracturing. The first stage in the HFWC is water acquisition: the*
4 *withdrawal of ground or surface water needed for hydraulic fracturing fluids. This is addressed in*
5 *Chapter 4.*

- 6 a. *Does the assessment accurately and clearly summarize the available information concerning*
7 *the sources and quantities of water used in hydraulic fracturing?*
- 8 b. *Are the quantities of water used and consumed in hydraulic fracturing accurately*
9 *characterized with respect to total water use and consumption at appropriate temporal and*
10 *spatial scales?*
- 11 c. *Are the major findings concerning water acquisition fully supported by the information and*
12 *data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to*
13 *drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other major findings that*
14 *have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any*
15 *impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
- 16 d. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning water acquisition fully and*
17 *clearly described?*
- 18 e. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
19 *should be assessed to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources*
20 *from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be*
21 *added in this section of the report?*

22 Chapter 4 discusses water acquisition, in particular the withdrawal of ground or surface water needed for
23 hydraulic fracturing fluids. The chapter describes the sources, quality and provisioning of water used
24 during hydraulic fracturing, water use per hydraulic fracturing well (including factors affecting such use
25 and national patterns associated with that use), cumulative water use and consumption at national, state
26 and county scales, and a chapter synthesis of major findings, factors affecting the frequency or severity
27 of impacts, and associated uncertainties.

28 **3.2.1. Summary of Available Information on Sources and Quantities of Water Used in HF**

- 29
- 30 a. *Does the assessment accurately and clearly summarize the available information concerning the*
31 *sources and quantities of water used in the hydraulic fracturing process?*
- 32

33 The assessment regarding the water acquisition stage in the HFWC clearly summarizes the available
34 information concerning the sources and quantities of water used from surface water, ground water, and
35 treated wastewaters. The SAB agrees there are gaps in the data available to assess water use.

36 Chapter 4 of the draft Assessment Report focuses on the water acquisition stage within the HFWC. The
37 EPA collected and analyzed an enormous amount of available information about the quantities of water
38 used in hydraulic fracturing that were clearly and accurately summarized. The analysis of water
39 acquisition for hydraulic fracturing is, from a geographical standpoint, the most comprehensive to date.
40 Information on water use from surface water, ground water, and treated wastewater sources is nicely
41 characterized. References are included regarding the use or re-use of wastewater, as well as non-
42 drinking sources such as brackish water, that lessen the impacts by reducing the need for fresh drinking
43 water sources. The analysis and discussion of impacts of water acquisition is focused at large scales, and
44 needs to address more local-scale impacts. The EPA should improve the clarity of its summary of

1 sources and quantities in water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing by using clearer, more consistent, and
2 technically accurate wording in regard to discussion of impacts.

3
4 The EPA compared water use in hydraulic fracturing to information on water use for other purposes.
5 The chapter concludes that withdrawals for hydraulic fracturing represent a small proportion of
6 freshwater usage at regional or state-wide levels. The chapter points out that in a small percentage of
7 areas, in particular at the county and sub-county scale, there is potential for combined impacts from all
8 uses of these sources. At local scales, water withdrawals can contribute significantly to groundwater
9 depletion, particularly in arid environments. Further, water withdrawals for hydraulic fracturing are also
10 capable of altering the flow regimes of small streams, even in regions of rainfall abundance. The EPA
11 has produced very informative graphics and tables that substantially improve the public availability of
12 information characterizing the sources and quantities of water used in hydraulic fracturing, and the
13 relationship between that use and drinking water. This information is also useful for focusing future
14 efforts to fill information gaps on sources and quantities of water used in hydraulic fracturing.

15
16 There are important gaps in the data available to assess water use that limit understanding of hydraulic
17 fracturing impacts on water acquisition, which were identified and discussed in the draft Assessment
18 Report in the context of sources of uncertainties. The EPA summarized many databases, journal articles,
19 technical reports, and other information describing sources and quantities in water acquisition for
20 hydraulic fracturing. Some of this information (especially technical reports, media reports, and
21 presentations at conferences) has not been peer reviewed, as noted in the report.

22
23 The draft Assessment Report relied heavily on two publicly available databases that provide only limited
24 capability to assess the sources and quantities of water used in the hydraulic fracturing process: a) the
25 FracFocus Chemical Disclosure Registry database, where major limitations include questions regarding
26 data completeness (e.g., including information from all wells in an area), the absence of information
27 considered proprietary for certain chemicals, and lack of information on the identity, properties,
28 frequency of use, magnitude of exposure, and toxicity potential for a substantial number of chemicals;
29 and b) the Water Use in the United States database from the USGS, where major limitations are
30 associated with limitations of the spatial and temporal scale of the data (e.g., information not available at
31 sub-county scales, and information on water used in hydraulic fracturing reported as part of larger
32 categories of mining water use).

33 **3.2.2. Total Water Use at Appropriate Temporal and Spatial Scales**

34
35 *b. Are the quantities of water used and consumed in hydraulic fracturing accurately characterized with*
36 *respect to total water use and consumption at appropriate temporal and spatial scales?*

37
38 The draft Assessment Report comprehensively characterizes the quantities of water used and consumed
39 for hydraulic fracturing at multiple temporal and spatial scales. Though the national scale images of how
40 water use is distributed across the country are useful and informative, the SAB finds that EPA's
41 statistical extrapolation to describe average conditions at the national scale may mask important regional
42 and local differences in water acquisition impacts. The SAB concludes that the analyses at local scales
43 (e.g., case studies) that were used to quantify how hydraulic fracturing water withdrawals affect short-
44 term water availability are more relevant spatial and temporal scales for assessing impacts of water
45 acquisition.

1 The draft Assessment Report comprehensively characterizes the quantities of water used and consumed
2 for hydraulic fracturing with respect to total water use at multiple temporal and spatial scales. The EPA
3 determined values for the average volume of water used per well using data from broad geographic
4 areas, and estimated total water use and consumption at national, state, and county scales. The EPA
5 compared the quantity of water used for hydraulic fracturing to quantities of water used for domestic
6 purposes, and to total water use for all purposes. The SAB recommends that the EPA expand this
7 comparison, put water use for hydraulic fracturing into a broader context by including all other primary
8 categories of water use from the U.S. Geological Survey classification, and update this comparison by
9 including contemporary values as possible. Further, the EPA should summarize the amounts of water
10 withdrawn for all uses relative to total annual streamflow.

11
12 The potential for the withdrawal of large volumes of water used in the hydraulic fracturing process to
13 affect water resources is characterized over broad geographic areas, in fifteen individual states where
14 hydraulic fracturing currently occurs. This information is used to scale up the results to consider average
15 conditions across the nation. Though information on water used in hydraulic fracturing at large spatial
16 and temporal scales is useful and informative, these are not the most appropriate or relevant scales to
17 consider the potential problem of water acquisition impacts. Typically, the amount of water used in
18 hydraulic fracturing would be very small compared to water availability over any large geographic
19 region (e.g., state or nation) or over any long time frame (e.g., annually), given the short duration of the
20 water use activity. The huge volumes of water required in the hydraulic fracturing process are used
21 infrequently, during initial well drilling and re-stimulation operations. The draft Assessment Report
22 should explicitly state that stresses to surface or ground water resources associated with water
23 acquisition and hydraulic fracturing are localized in space, and temporary in time.

24
25 The discussion of quantities of water used and consumed in hydraulic fracturing is hampered by the lack
26 of information on water use and availability at local scales, as noted in the draft Assessment Report. The
27 case studies used to quantify the effect of hydraulic fracturing water withdrawals on short-term water
28 availability are the most relevant and appropriate spatial and temporal scales discussed in the draft
29 Assessment Report for assessing the impacts of water acquisition. While the draft Assessment Report
30 discusses the difficulties associated with assessing impacts at local scales where the greatest impacts are
31 likely to occur, reliable data are generally lacking at local scales, and site-specific factors strongly
32 influence both water use and water management decisions. The SAB recommends that the EPA conduct
33 further work to explore how hydraulic fracturing water withdrawals affect short-term water availability
34 at local scales, such as proposed in the prospective studies described in the Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011)
35 but which were subsequently not conducted. The EPA should clarify if any information of the Well File
36 Review included descriptions of water acquired for hydraulic fracturing at local and site specific scales.

37
38 The EPA should include timeframes in its analyses in order to put numeric values in the proper time
39 perspective. The SAB has concerns with the EPA's use of the term "cumulative impacts" and notes that
40 the EPA assessed total use rather than cumulative use. The EPA should consider reviewing the units of
41 volume and flowrate used in each section the draft Assessment Report (including Chapters 3 and 4 and
42 Appendix B, which pertain to water acquisition) and consider whether alternate units, or supplemental
43 units in parentheses, would improve clarity. Further, the EPA should check whether the volumes or
44 flowrates presented in the draft Assessment Report were accurately presented as percentages of other
45 volumes or flowrates, in order to make sure the information is accurately conveyed.

1 **3.2.3. Major Findings**

2
3 *c.1 Are the major findings concerning water acquisition fully supported by the information and data*
4 *presented in the assessment?*

5
6 The major findings concerning water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing (from surface waters, ground
7 waters, and treated wastewaters) were generally supported by the information and data presented in the
8 assessment. However, the finding that there were no cases where water use for hydraulic fracturing
9 alone caused a stream or well run dry is not appropriate in order to determine severity of impacts, since,
10 for example, a stream with substantially decreased water availability, or a well with drawdown as a
11 result of water acquisition, may be impacted. The SAB recommends that the EPA characterize
12 imbalances between water supply and demand, and localized effects, including water quality effects, as
13 affected by many interactive factors, since this may provide an improved assessment of impacts and
14 benefits.

15 The major findings regarding the sources of water acquisition, the range of amounts of water used in
16 hydraulic fracturing, and the conditions where potential for impacts that may occur are supported by the
17 data that are presented in the draft Assessment Report. One conclusion was that the amount of water
18 used in hydraulic fracturing is very small compared with total water use and consumption at county or
19 statewide spatial scales. The chapter should explicitly state that stresses to surface or ground water
20 resources associated with water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing are localized in space, and
21 temporary in time. The impacts of water acquisition would predominantly be felt locally at small space
22 and time scales, which are not well represented in the draft Assessment Report. The draft Assessment
23 Report should include additional emphasis noting that the potential for impacts on drinking water
24 resources is greatest in areas with high hydraulic fracturing water use, low water availability, and
25 frequent drought. This is illustrated within the draft Assessment Report through examples from case
26 studies. For example, in a study in southern Texas in the Eagle Ford Shale region where there is a dense
27 array of natural gas wells, there is not much water supply available to support the needs for water
28 acquisition, and groundwater use there is causing change in water storage and drawdown of the local
29 water table.

30
31 *c.2 Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage*
32 *of the HFWC?*

33
34 Several case studies were used to explore how hydraulic fracturing water withdrawals affect short-term
35 water availability, and given the emphasis on local conditions, are the most relevant spatial and temporal
36 scales that were used in the draft Assessment Report for considering potential impacts to drinking water
37 resources due to hydraulic fracturing water acquisition. These studies illustrate how hydraulic fracturing
38 water withdrawals may affect short- and long-term water availability in areas experiencing high rates of
39 hydraulic fracturing. Results suggest that water imbalances from hydraulic fracturing operations have
40 not occurred in either the Susquehanna River basin or the upper Colorado River basin. These studies
41 demonstrated that many local factors and local heterogeneity explain whether water imbalances occur.
42 However, the SAB finds that since the EPA conducted case studies on only a few river basins, the role
43 of factors such as climate, geology, water management, and water sources could not be fully explored.

44
45 The EPA should improve the clarity of its major findings regarding the potential impacts to drinking
46 water resources from water acquisition, and use less ambiguous, more consistent, and technically

1 accurate wording. For example, the draft Assessment Report states that “*Detailed case studies in*
2 *western Colorado and northeastern Pennsylvania **did not show impacts**, despite indicating that streams*
3 *could be vulnerable to water withdrawals from hydraulic fracturing.*” (emphasis added). However, the
4 case study report that is cited concludes: “***Minimal impacts to past or present drinking water supplies***
5 *or other water users resulting from hydraulic fracturing water acquisition **were found** in either study*
6 *basin due to unique combinations of these factors in each area.*” (emphasis added). Since “Minimal
7 impacts” is not the same as “no impacts,” the EPA should clarify these findings and results.

8
9 *c.3. Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward?*

10
11 There are several other major findings that the EPA should consider bringing forward. First, it should be
12 more clearly noted that the stresses on water resources from water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing
13 are expected to be local and temporary, and not to understate the potential for localized problems.
14 Several of the public commenters, for example, expressed concern with surface waters taken from small
15 rivers or streams. In such cases the timing of water withdrawals with relation to flow conditions is
16 important, since withdrawals during low flow periods may result in dewatering and severe impacts on
17 small streams. More attention needs to be given to describing the potential impacts on water resources at
18 “hot spots” in space (e.g., headwater streams) and in time (e.g., seasonally, and/or under low flow
19 conditions).

20
21 Second, the EPA should consider further exploring and describing how water acquisition and associated
22 potential impacts on lowered streamflow and water table drawdown could affect the quality of drinking
23 water. For example, if streamflow is reduced, the draft Assessment Report should describe what might
24 be the effects on chloride or total dissolved solids in streamflow, and how this might affect water supply
25 and treatment costs.

26
27 Third, the draft Assessment Report should present recent findings about the evolution of technologies to
28 improve water re-use. The re-uses of wastewater and produced formation water are described in the draft
29 Assessment Report, and the EPA should expand on the discussion of the technologies that are being
30 used for re-use of produced water or other non-drinking sources of water. While most geographic areas
31 show very low percentage of reuse of these sources of water, the reuse percentages in some regions can
32 be high. The EPA should consider exploring and describing within the draft Assessment Report how and
33 why the Garfield County region in Colorado (Piceance Basin) is able to use 100% wastewater for
34 hydraulic fracturing (as indicated in Table 4-1 of the draft Assessment Report). This situation may be
35 due to a combination of the wastewater quality in this area, that the area has been unitized (with all
36 operators sharing infrastructure to produce the fields), and that the area is mature (having been one of
37 the early areas of unconventional tight gas sand development). These combined factors together may
38 have allowed time for the technology to develop for reuse of produced wastewater. Even though this is a
39 local scale occurrence, this could be a major finding that might inform development of this technology
40 in other areas.

1 **3.2.4. Frequency or Severity of Impacts**

2
3 *c.4. Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible*
4 *and fully supported?*

5
6 The description of the frequency of impacts is highly generalized and qualitative. Though the statements
7 about factors affecting the frequency and severity of impacts are reasonable, the SAB recommends that
8 the EPA strengthen and clarify the general statements within the draft Assessment Report by adding
9 more specific and quantitative results. The draft Assessment Report explains thoroughly the potential for
10 impacts and the types of conditions that warrant caution with respect to both water quantity and quality
11 impacts at local scales. The draft Assessment Report proposes that proper water management in these
12 areas may be able to reduce the potential impacts, which may include adding the use of non-drinking
13 sources, and examples of this are shown in the draft Assessment Report.

14
15 The draft Assessment Report noted that there were no cases where water use for hydraulic fracturing
16 alone caused a stream or well to *run dry*, yet the EPA finds that this is not necessarily an appropriate
17 metric to consider severity of impacts. Even if streams have not dried up, streams experiencing
18 substantially decreased water availability as a result of water acquisition, or wells experiencing
19 drawdown as a result of water acquisition, are impacted by this stage of the HFWC. The SAB
20 recommends that the EPA characterize imbalances between water supply and demand, and localized
21 effects, including water quality effects, as affected by many interactive factors, since this may provide
22 an improved assessment of impacts and benefits.

23 **3.2.5. Uncertainties, Assumptions and Limitations**

24
25 *d. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning water acquisition fully and clearly*
26 *described?*

27
28 The draft Assessment Report fully and clearly describes the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations
29 about water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing. There are important gaps in the data and information
30 available to assess water use that the EPA acknowledges. The EPA summarizes a vast quantity of
31 information from databases, journal articles, technical reports, and other sources of information that
32 describes sources and quantities in water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing. Some of this information
33 (especially technical reports, media reports, and presentations at conferences) has not been peer
34 reviewed, as noted in the draft Assessment Report.

35
36 Many of the key findings presented in the draft Assessment Report relied on two publicly available
37 databases toward assessing the sources and quantities of water used in the hydraulic fracturing process.
38 process: a) the FracFocus Chemical Disclosure Registry database, where major limitations include
39 questions regarding data completeness (e.g., including information from all wells in an area), the
40 absence of information considered proprietary for certain chemicals, and lack of information on the
41 identity, properties, frequency of use, magnitude of exposure, and toxicity potential for a substantial
42 number of chemicals; and b) the Water Use in the United States database from the USGS, where major
43 limitations are associated with limitations of the spatial and temporal scale of the data (e.g., information
44 not available at sub-county scales, and information on water used in hydraulic fracturing reported as part
45 of larger categories of mining water use).

1 The FracFocus Chemical Disclosure Registry database (<http://fracfocus.org>) is compiled by the Ground
2 Water Protection Council and the Interstate Oil and Gas Compact Commission. This includes
3 information on water and chemical use data, as reported by the hydraulic fracturing industry. Potential
4 limitations and uncertainties of this dataset for this assessment stem from incomplete information all oil
5 and gas wells, and from the reliability of the unverified information. Second is Water Use in the United
6 States database (<http://water.usgs.gov/watuse/>), compiled by the U.S. Geological Survey. This includes
7 data on water used by source and category, as reported by local, state, and federal environmental
8 agencies. Potential limitations and uncertainties of this dataset are associated with the spatial and
9 temporal scale of the information presented (by county and state, in five-year intervals), the categories
10 of data (e.g., with data definitions changing over time, and with water used for hydraulic fracturing
11 reported as part of a larger overall category of water use associated with mining). The EPA should
12 update the study results with the latest information from the current versions of these databases.

13
14 An additional source of uncertainty is the poor quality and sparse information on specific water
15 withdrawals from groundwater, streams, and surface-water reservoirs. Although data on locations and
16 volumes of water withdrawal are available for some regions (e.g., Pennsylvania's Susquehanna River
17 Basin), this sort of information is not recorded, or is at least inaccessible, for several states included in
18 the EPA's analysis. The availability or absence of data may reflect differences in regulations and
19 regulatory oversight. The SAB recommends that the EPA include within Chapter 4 a review of the
20 regulatory landscape governing water withdrawals for hydraulic fracturing and an evaluation of the
21 various regulatory approaches for their efficacy in safeguarding against freshwater depletion at local
22 scales.

23
24 At local scales, where the greatest impacts are most likely to occur, data are generally lacking, as
25 pointed out in the draft Assessment Report. The case studies included in the study demonstrate that local
26 heterogeneity and site-specific factors determine water imbalances at local sites, and that results cannot
27 be extrapolated to entire river basins. The EPA should enhance the understanding of localized impacts
28 by providing more focus and analysis on the Well File Review and on examination of other information
29 not in the archival scientific literature and common databases in order to provide more new information
30 about actual hydraulic fracturing water acquisition and its relationship to drinking water, and less focus
31 on hypothetical scenarios and modeling.

32 **3.2.6. Additional Information, Background or Context to be Added**

33
34 *e.1. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should be*
35 *assessed to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from this stage of the*
36 *HFWC?*

37
38 Given limitations in the availability of water consumption and use data, especially at local scales, and in
39 the representativeness of the case studies used, many interactive factors contributing to understanding
40 effects of hydraulic fracturing on water availability and quality -- such as climate, geology, water
41 management, and multiple water sources -- could not be fully characterized.

42 In the future the EPA should continue research on expanded case studies and long-term prospective
43 studies.

1 One of the key limitations toward understanding the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing water
2 acquisition on drinking water is the availability and reliability of data. The EPA should articulate future
3 needs for reliable, independent data on water use and consumption that may better facilitate assessment
4 of potential impacts to drinking water resources. Another area for improvement is the EPA's reliance on
5 the publicly available databases for this draft Assessment Report, including the FracFocus Chemical
6 Disclosure Registry database and the Water Use in the United States database. The SAB identifies a
7 number of concerns regarding the EPA's reliance on the FracFocus database, and provides suggestions
8 for acknowledging and addressing these concerns within the Executive Summary of this SAB Report.
9

10 The EPA could potentially reduce gaps in understanding the relationship between water acquisition for
11 hydraulic fracturing and drinking water by using available information from the Well File study
12 database. The EPA's 2012 Progress Report identified the Well File Review as a key data source for
13 many aspects of the relationship between hydraulic fracturing and drinking water, including water
14 acquisition, yet the 2015 Well File Review Report does not contain any information about water
15 acquisition, and that report is not cited in Chapter 4 of the draft assessment. The SAB recommends that
16 the EPA add at least a brief summary of the information about water acquisition that was provided by
17 the Well File Review into the draft Assessment Report, and explain why that information was not
18 included in the draft Assessment Report.
19

20 The case studies are limited in terms of the sites and associated environmental conditions that they
21 represent and the results are not readily transferrable to other areas. Therefore, many interactive factors
22 that need to be considered toward understanding effects of the HFWC on water availability and quality -
23 - such as climate, geology, water management, and multiple water sources-- could not be fully
24 characterized. The EPA should continue to explore how hydraulic fracturing water withdrawals affect
25 short-term water availability at local scales, as proposed in the prospective studies that were in the Study
26 Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) but which were subsequently not conducted. The lack of prospective studies
27 remains a major limitation of the draft Assessment Report. Such studies would allow the EPA to
28 monitor water acquisition and its effects to a level of detail not practiced by industry or required by state
29 regulation. These detailed new data would allow the EPA to reduce current uncertainties and research
30 gaps about the relation between hydraulic fracturing water acquisition and drinking water.
31

32 The EPA could conduct further research explaining how reported (or purported) cases of water
33 acquisition impacts on drinking water actually occurred, and to what extent the factors controlling the
34 frequency and extent of these impacts are being addressed by improved operator practices, and
35 regulatory oversight. Controversial or contentious sites should not be ignored, but addressed directly.
36 The draft Assessment Report does not focus adequate attention on local experiences of water impacts
37 actually experienced prior to and during the study period that have been described in local newspapers,
38 media coverage, agency reports, and/or publications. Such attention would have provided more
39 information on the frequency and severity of impacts based on actual experiences.
40

41 The agency should synthesize information that is collected by the states but not available in mainstream
42 databases, such as well completion reports, permit applications and the associated water management
43 plans. Such additional, site-specific information would greatly aid in further assessing water use and
44 cumulative water withdrawals. Further, additional data from water management agencies could be
45 synthesized to better understand impacts at local spatial scales. For example, as noted in the draft
46 Assessment Report, water use management in the Susquehanna River Basin and other areas is credited
47 with minimizing the impact of hydraulic fracturing withdrawals on stream flow. The EPA could present

1 more detail, using monitoring data from industry and from the Susquehanna River Basin Commission, in
2 order to develop a better understanding how hydraulic fracturing could have impacted the drinking water
3 due to temporal dynamics. The EPA should consider exploring these dynamics at local scales by
4 examination of these and other water use management events.

5
6 *e2. Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?*

7
8 The SAB encourages the EPA to use additional available information from the Well File study database
9 to characterize water acquisition impacts, as planned in the 2012 Progress Report.

10 The EPA also should review the following additional literature and data sources related to water
11 acquisition for potential inclusion in this section of the draft Assessment Report:

12
13 Barth-Naftilan, E., N. Aloysius, and J. E. Saiers. 2015. Spatial and temporal trends in freshwater
14 appropriation for natural gas development in Pennsylvania's Marcellus Shale Play. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*
15 42, doi:10.1002/2015GL065240.

16
17 Entekin, S.A., K.O. Maloney, K.E. Kapo A.W. Walters, M.A. Evans-White, and K.M. Klemow. 2015.
18 Stream Vulnerability to Widespread and Emergent Stressors: A Focus on Unconventional Oil and Gas.
19 PLoS ONE 10(9): e0137416. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0137416

20
21 Freyman, M. 2014. Hydraulic fracturing and water stress: Water demand by the numbers. Shareholder,
22 lender & operator guide to water sourcing. Ceres report. Online URL:
23 [http://www.ceres.org/issues/water/shale-energy/shale-and-water-maps/hydraulicfracturing-water-stress-](http://www.ceres.org/issues/water/shale-energy/shale-and-water-maps/hydraulicfracturing-water-stress-water-demand-by-the-numbers)
24 [water-demand-by-the-numbers](http://www.ceres.org/issues/water/shale-energy/shale-and-water-maps/hydraulicfracturing-water-stress-water-demand-by-the-numbers)

25
26 Hildenbrand, Z.L., D.D. Carlton Jr., B.E. Fontenot, J.M. Meik, J.L. Walton, J.T. Taylor, J.B. Thacker, S.
27 Korlie, C.P. Shelor, D. Henderson, A.F. Kadio, C.E. Roelke, P.F. Hudak, T. Burton, H.S. Rifai, and K.A.
28 Schug. 2015. A comprehensive analysis of groundwater quality in the Barnett Shale Region. *Environ.*
29 *Sci. Technol.* 49(13), p. 8254–8262. DOI: 10.1021/acs.est.5b01526.

30 Jackson, R.B., E.R. Lowry, A. Pickle, M. Knag, D. DiGiulio, and K. Zhao. 2015. The depths of
31 hydraulic fracturing and accompanying water use across the United States. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*
32 49(15), p. 8969-8976. doi: 10.1021/acs.est.5b01228.

33 Rahm, B.G., & S.J. Riha. 2012. Toward strategic management of shale gas development: Regional,
34 collective impacts on water resources. *Environ. Sci. & Pol.* 17, p. 12-23. March 2012. doi:
35 10.1016/j.envsci.2011.12.004.

36
37 Rahm, B.G., J.T. Bates, L.R. Bertoia, A.E. Galford, D.A. Yoxheimer, and S.J. Riha. 2013. Wastewater
38 management and Marcellus Shale gas development: trends, drivers, and planning implications. *J.*
39 *Environmental Management* 120, p. 105-113. May 15, 2013. doi: 10.1016/j.jenvman.2013.02.029.
40 Online URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2013.02.029>.

41
42 Reig, P., T. Luo, and J.N. Proctor, World Resources Institute, Global Shale Gas Development: Water
43 Availability & Business Risks, September 2014.

1 Shank, M. K., and J. R. Stauffer Jr.. 2014. Land use and surface water withdrawals effects on fish and
2 macroinvertebrate assemblages in the Susquehanna River basin, USA. *J. Freshwater Ecol.* 13.
3 doi:10.1080/02705060.2014.959082.

4
5 Vengosh, A.; R.B. Jackson, N. Warner, T.H. Darrah, and A. Kondash. 2014. A critical review of the
6 risks to water resources from unconventional shale gas development and hydraulic fracturing in the
7 United States. *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 48(15), p. 8334–8348. March 7, 2014. DOI: 10.1021/es405118y.
8

1 **3.3. Chemical Mixing Stage in the HFWC**

2 *Question 3: The second stage in the HFWC is chemical mixing: the mixing of water, chemicals, and*
3 *proppant on the well pad to create the hydraulic fracturing fluid. This is addressed in Chapter 5.*

- 4 a. *Does the assessment accurately and clearly summarize the available information concerning*
5 *the composition, volume, and management of the chemicals used to create hydraulic*
6 *fracturing fluids?*
- 7 b. *Are the major findings concerning chemical mixing fully supported by the information and*
8 *data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to*
9 *drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other major findings that*
10 *have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any*
11 *impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
- 12 c. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical mixing fully and*
13 *clearly described?*
- 14 d. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
15 *should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources*
16 *from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be*
17 *added in this section of the report?*

18 Chapter 5 discusses chemical mixing, in particular the mixing of water, chemicals, and proppant on the
19 well pad to create the hydraulic fracturing fluid. The chapter describes the chemical mixing process,
20 provides an overview of hydraulic fracturing fluids including discussions on water-based fluids,
21 alternative fluids, and proppants (granular additives such as fine sand injected to hold open
22 microfractures), and discusses the frequency and volume of hydraulic fracturing chemical use, including
23 descriptions of the frequency with which hydraulic fracturing chemicals are used at the national scale,
24 national oil versus gas usage of chemicals, and a state-by-state discussion on the frequency of hydraulic
25 fracturing chemical use. Chapter 5 also discusses chemical management and spill potential associated
26 with hydraulic fracturing operations, chemical storage, hoses and lines, blending operations,
27 manifolding (bringing together multiple fluid flow lines), high-pressure pumps, and surface wellhead
28 fracture stimulation. In addition, Chapter 5 describes spill prevention, containment, and mitigation
29 associated with hydraulic fracturing operations, fate and transport of hydraulic fracturing chemicals,
30 trends in chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing, and a chapter synthesis of major findings, factors
31 affecting the frequency or severity of impacts, and uncertainties.

32 **3.3.1. Summary of Available Information on the Composition, Volume and Management of**
33 **Hydraulic Fracturing Chemicals**

34
35 a. *Does the assessment accurately and clearly summarize the available information concerning the*
36 *composition, volume, and management of the chemicals used to create hydraulic fracturing fluid.*
37

38 The chemical mixing stage of the HFWC includes a series of above-ground, engineered processes
39 involving complex hydraulic fracturing fluid pumping and mixing operations, and the potential failure of
40 these processes, including near-site containment, poses a potentially significant risk to drinking water
41 supplies. The draft Assessment Report does not accurately and clearly summarize the available
42 information concerning the composition, volume, and management of the chemicals used to create
43 hydraulic fracturing fluid. Chapter 5, as it stands, provides little knowledge of the magnitude of
44 hydraulic fracturing spills and it does not adequately describe either the uncertainty or the lack of

1 understanding of such spills, and the EPA should revise its assessments associated with this stage of the
2 HFWC to address these concerns. An accurate assessment would detail data gaps, provide quantitative
3 uncertainties and an overall evaluation of the actual state of knowledge. The chapter is a general, mostly
4 qualitative, description of industrial mixing processes and fluid compositions. Most concerned readers
5 understand that a substantial fraction of chemical additives are unknown, either by identity or behavior.
6 This chapter does little to alleviate the basic concern regarding the understanding of the composition of
7 hydraulic fracturing fluids and, by extension, how they would behave after a spill. The agency should
8 revise Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment Report to provide more information regarding the extent or
9 potential extent of the effects of chemical mixing processes from hydraulic fracturing operations to
10 drinking water supplies.

11
12 **HF fluids:** The draft Assessment Report’s discussion of hydraulic fracturing fluids and their properties
13 is primarily based upon the FracFocus 1.0 database. A lack of verification of the accuracy and
14 completeness of the FracFocus information (page 5-73) makes conclusions regarding the data that are
15 reported uncertain. The SAB identifies a number of concerns regarding the EPA’s reliance on the
16 FracFocus database, and provides suggestions for acknowledging and addressing these concerns within
17 the Executive Summary of this SAB Report.

18
19 The draft Assessment Report broadly describes the extent of the chemical data record but should be
20 critical of what is not known and the consequences of this uncertainty (e.g., only 453 of the 1076
21 chemicals identified in hydraulic fracturing fluids have their physical/chemical properties determined).
22 As such, the SAB does not recommend that the EPA make generalizations regarding how chemicals will
23 behave. Since the majority of hydraulic fracturing fluids are aqueous-based (> 90%), concentrations in
24 this report are calculated based on water as the carrier fluid. However, the SAB finds that the description
25 of concentrations becomes confusing, and likely inaccurate, when non-aqueous-carrier phases such as
26 methanol are the dominant liquid. To address these concerns, the SAB recommends that the draft
27 Assessment Report provide a more rigorous explanation of volume, concentration, mass and ‘chemical
28 activity’ as it relates to the carrier fluid.

29
30 **Chemical mixing’ and delivery processes:** The section on chemical mixing and delivery processes
31 provides a broad overview of the steps involved (i.e., ‘phases’; Fig. 5-3) as well as a description of the
32 actual ‘mechanical’ actions involved, such as types of pumping equipment and hose operations. The
33 fluid transfer steps of chemical mixing and delivery are key potential sources of spilled liquids to
34 containment structures or directly to the environment. The SAB recommends that the EPA
35 explain/assess the efficiency (i.e., failure rates) of these operations, and provide more information on: 1)
36 the potential of spilled liquids during routine operations; and 2) actions that can improve spill
37 prevention. For example, Figure 5.13 indicates that approximately 1/3 of spilled liquids are sourced to
38 ‘equipment’ or ‘hose or line’ failure. The EPA should describe whether these spills are the consequence
39 of many small leaks or a few substantial ones. Since many of the mechanical operations used in
40 hydraulic fracturing ‘mixing’ are common to other industrial processes, the EPA should provide
41 information on the failure record of these operations. Page 5-43, line 17, notes that 60% of spilled
42 liquids in Colorado were caused by equipment failure, and the EPA should describe what is the source
43 of the variability in the origin of these spills within the draft Assessment Report.

44 Another source of uncertainty is the behavior of mixed chemicals. To a certain extent the sub-text of the
45 discussion is that the various additives behave ‘conservatively’ (i.e., non-reactive) upon mixing. The
46 EPA should describe what occurs when an acid comes into contact with some of the organic additives,

1 and whether chemical behavior depends on the carrier phase (i.e., water or methanol). In addition, the
2 SAB recommends that the EPA gather data and reference information regarding the efficiency of
3 different mixing steps and delivery from mixing and delivery operations that are common and employed
4 in other industries. Similarly, the agency should improve this section by including by practical
5 information on spill mitigation practices such as secondary containment, berm construction to prevent
6 surface transport, and barriers to prevent spilled hydraulic fracturing fluids from reaching the
7 subsurface.

8
9 ***Chemical and spill management and potential impacts on the environment:*** Within the Chapter 5
10 discussion on chemical and spill management and potential impacts on water resources, the data sets for
11 spills are incomplete, at least those that are readily available in electronic format. The SAB notes that
12 the EPA’s estimates on the frequency of on-site spills were based upon information from two states, and
13 expresses concern that these estimates cannot be confidently extrapolated across the entire U.S. based on
14 such limited data. The EPA should address this significant ‘completeness’ issue in this section of
15 Chapter 5, and describe the extent and types of spill reporting to states. The SAB also recommends that
16 the draft Assessment Report include a more thorough presentation and explanation of the frequency and
17 types of data that the hydraulic fracturing industry reports, some of which may not be readily accessible
18 (i.e., not in electronic format that is ‘searchable’). For example, Reference [5] (noted below under the
19 ‘additional types of data sources to consider’ section of this response to charge question 3) documents
20 that a substantial number of uncontained spills have occurred during North Dakota oil field operations.
21 The SAB notes that while many of these spills may not be strictly part of the ‘chemical mixing’ step,
22 these spills provide information on the integrity of fluid management operations in general. The EPA
23 over-interpreted this limited data in its conclusion that the risk to drinking water supplies from this stage
24 of the HFWC is not substantial, and the EPA should revise this interpretation of these limited data.

25
26 ***Trends in chemical use in hydraulic fracturing operations:*** Section 5.9 describes ongoing changes in
27 the hydraulic fracturing industry in the form of developing hydraulic fracturing chemical additives that
28 the EPA considers to be ‘safer’ to the environment. The SAB notes that this section is not a critical
29 review of such efforts. However, the SAB also notes that little is known about specific hydraulic
30 fracturing chemicals and their safety and efficacy. The SAB recommends that the EPA clarify in this
31 section of the draft Assessment Report that economic issues may play an important role in the hydraulic
32 fracturing industry’s substitution of hydraulic fracturing chemical additives for currently used additives.
33 The SAB also recommends that the agency expand this chapter to include a more critical evaluation of
34 this trend in hydraulic fracturing.

35 **3.3.2. Major Findings**

36 *b1. Are the major findings concerning chemical mixing fully supported by the information and data*
37 *presented in the assessment?*

38 The EPA’s major finding and conclusion described in Section 5.10.1 of the draft Assessment Report that
39 there were ‘no documented impacts to groundwater’ for the 497 spills evaluated by the EPA, and in
40 Section 10.1.2., on page 10-8, and on page ES-13, where the EPA notes that “*None of the spills of*
41 *hydraulic fracturing fluid were reported to have reached ground water,*” is not supported by the
42 information and data presented in the draft Assessment Report, due to the EPA’s incomplete assessment
43 of spilled liquids and consequences. The SAB is concerned that this major finding is supported only by
44 an absence of evidence rather than by evidence of absence of impact. The ‘available information’ has

1 been broadly summarized in the report but the limitations of the data sources (e.g., FracFocus) have led
2 to an incomplete record associated with the potential impacts associated with such spills. The SAB
3 identifies a number of concerns regarding the EPA’s reliance on the FracFocus database, and provides
4 suggestions for acknowledging and addressing these concerns within the Executive Summary of this
5 SAB Report. Further, there is a lack of a critical assessment of the data presented in this chapter in a
6 number of instances, and the SAB concludes that the EPA needs to conduct such critical assessment to
7 support conclusions that the EPA may make on such data. For example, while the EPA considers spill
8 volume to be an indicator of potential severity, spill volume is not necessarily an indicator of potential
9 severity because the composition of spilled fluids, including chemical species and concentrations, plays
10 an important role in determining the severity of a potential environmental threat resulting from a spill.

11 ***Relationship between the chemical mixing step of the HFWC and drinking water quality:*** A
12 secondary conclusion of the draft Assessment Report is that there is insufficient information to assess
13 the relationship between the chemical mixing step of the HFWC and drinking water quality (Section
14 5.10.3). The SAB finds that the data presented by the EPA within Chapter 5 supports an occurrence of
15 spilled liquids at hydraulic fracturing sites, and that there are varying causes, composition, frequency,
16 volume, and severity of such spills. The SAB agrees that a substantial problem with the synthesis
17 presented in this chapter is a failure by the EPA to accurately and fully describe the uncertainty
18 surrounding the issues regarding this conclusion. An example of this problem is the statement provided
19 on page 5-71, line 14 of the draft Assessment Report noting: “The EPA analysis of 497 spills reports
20 found no documented impacts to groundwater from those chemical spills, *though there was little*
21 *information on post-spill testing and sampling.*” At the same time, the EPA cites Gross *et al.* (2013),
22 which examined the Colorado Oil and Gas Conservation Commission (COGCC) spill database for a
23 year’s time in 2010-2011. Gross *et al.* (Reference [4] noted below under the ‘additional types of data
24 sources to consider’ section of this response to charge question 3) write in the abstract:

25 “We analyzed publically available data reported by operators to the COGCC regarding *surface*
26 *spills that impacted groundwater.* From July 2010 to July 2011, we noted *77 reported surface*
27 *spills impacting the groundwater* in Weld County, which resulted in surface spills associated
28 with less than 0.5% of the active wells.”

29 The SAB is concerned that this information raises questions regarding the completeness of the draft
30 Assessment Report regarding spills. The SAB recommends that the EPA clarify its statements in the
31 draft Assessment Report on this topic in light of these comments, and also clarify whether the apparent
32 lack of data is reflective of non-existent data or data that are reported somewhere but are not readily
33 available. The SAB also recommends that the agency expand this chapter of the draft Assessment
34 Report to provide improved analysis on the current state of data reporting on spills and the nature of
35 hydraulic fracturing fluids.

36 An additional point is that the report conflates spill frequency and spill volume with spill severity. The
37 draft Assessment Report should define severity and impact in a way that is amenable to some sort of
38 quantitative analysis and clearly delineate those factors contributing to spill severity (e.g., the mass of a
39 spilled chemical that has the potential to reach an environmental receptor, and the toxicity of spilled
40 chemicals). Additionally, a number of states have spill reporting requirements, and processes, that may
41 not be readily available in electronic, searchable form. The SAB recommends that the EPA investigate
42 at least one state as a detailed example for scrutinizing the spill data (e.g., North Dakota, Reference [6])

1 noted below under the ‘additional types of data sources to consider’ section of this response to Charge
2 Question 3).

3 ***FracFocus 1.0:*** The EPA used FracFocus 1.0 during its study period to support most of the data
4 assessment associated with EPA’s development of the draft Assessment Report. The EPA outlines
5 limitations of FracFocus data within the draft Assessment Report, and the SAB agrees with those
6 concerns and expresses additional concerns regarding the use of this data. The SAB finds that a central
7 problem regarding use of the FracFocus 1.0 data set is that it does not represent the full suite of
8 hydraulic fracturing operations taking place within the U.S. during the study period. A lack of
9 verification of the accuracy and completeness of the FracFocus information makes conclusions
10 regarding the data that are reported uncertain. The SAB identifies a number of additional concerns
11 regarding the EPA’s reliance on the FracFocus database, and provides suggestions for acknowledging
12 and addressing these concerns within the Executive Summary of this SAB Report.

13
14 *b2. Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage*
15 *of the HFWC?*

16
17 The major findings presented in Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment Report do not identify the potential
18 impacts to drinking water resources due to the chemical mixing stage of the HFWC. The SAB concludes
19 that ‘potential impacts’ is inherently an issue of severity, and as described further under the response to
20 sub-question b.4 of this charge question, the chapter does not provide the basis for understanding the
21 potential for spills affecting drinking water supplies. The SAB finds that a conclusion on potential
22 impact is a quantitative function of (at least) spill composition, frequency, containment probability,
23 response adequacy, and the transport of chemical constituents to the environmental receptor. The SAB
24 finds that the EPA does not adequately evaluate any of these factors in a manner to provide sufficient
25 quantitative assessment of potential impacts and severity.

26
27 *b3. Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward?*

28
29 There are three other major findings that should be presented in Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment
30 Report:

- 31
- 32 1. Uncertainty regarding undetected and unmonitored hydraulic fracturing chemicals. There is
33 significant uncertainty regarding which hydraulic fracturing chemicals are currently in use. A crucial
34 oversight within the draft Assessment Report is the lack of discussion on the degree of undetected,
35 unmonitored hydraulic fracturing chemicals and analytical assessment of the many uncommon
36 chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing. The SAB recommends that the EPA assess potential impact
37 and the underlying uncertainty associated with these undetected, unmonitored hydraulic fracturing
38 chemicals and incorporate such an assessment into this chapter of the draft Assessment Report. This
39 assessment should also consider how many hydraulic fracturing chemicals that are in use do not
40 have analytical methods, and are not undergoing monitoring.
 - 41
 - 42 2. Uncertainty regarding the identity of hydraulic fracturing chemicals used in particular hydraulic
43 fracturing operations, as compounded by limited knowledge about on-site chemical stockpiles. There
44 is significant uncertainty regarding the identity of chemicals used in particular hydraulic fracturing
45 operations, and this uncertainty is compounded by limited knowledge about on-site hydraulic
46 fracturing chemical stockpiles. These stockpiles may change markedly over the time period of a

1 hydraulic fracturing operation. Container failure is a major source of hydraulic fracturing spills, and
2 the effectiveness of spill containment is of significant concern as well. The reports of most spills
3 discussed in the draft Assessment Report included little or no field investigation of the impacts of the
4 release, or any documented after-spill investigation of suspected chemical contamination. The EPA
5 should bring such information, either by direct EPA study or analogue studies, into the draft
6 Assessment Report.

- 7
- 8 3. Uncertainty regarding spills. There is significant uncertainty regarding the frequency, severity, and
9 type of hydraulic fracturing-related spills, and the agency should address this uncertainty in this
10 chapter of the draft Assessment Report. The EPA should conduct, or at least include a plan for, a
11 detailed study of state reports on spills (perhaps one example target state) with a full statistical
12 analysis. This study should include: a) the state of practice by the industry in spill monitoring and
13 reporting; b) an assessment of state records regarding spills; and c) a more rigorous scientific
14 description of potential severity of spilled liquids (e.g., type of spill, concentration of constituents,
15 and volume).

16 **3.3.3. Frequency or Severity of Impacts**

17

18 *b4. Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and*
19 *fully supported?*

20

21 The factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts associated with hydraulic fracturing-
22 related spills are not described to the extent possible nor are they fully supported. While the EPA
23 conducted a large effort in developing Chapter 5, the SAB is concerned that two fundamental,
24 underlying questions have not been answered: What is the potential that spills that occur during the
25 ‘chemical mixing’ process affect drinking water supplies, and what are the relevant concerns associated
26 with the degree to which these spills impact drinking water supplies?

27

28 This chapter addresses five linked topics: 1) ‘chemical mixing’ and delivery processes; 2) description of
29 hydraulic fracturing fluid components and their properties; 3) the potential impacts of hydraulic
30 fracturing fluids on the environment, including spill volume and frequency; 4) principles of
31 environmental fate and transport of potentially-spilled hydraulic fracturing fluids; and 5) trends in
32 chemical use in hydraulic fracturing operations. In order to conduct a ‘severity’ analysis, the EPA must
33 assess each of the above factors in such a way that a quantitative assessment of likelihood can be
34 derived. By these criteria, the SAB finds that the EPA’s assessment towards each of these linked topics
35 is in need of substantial improvement.

36

37 The SAB recommends that the EPA substantially modify the discussion in Section 5.8 on fate and
38 transport of spilled hydraulic fracturing chemicals. The SAB finds that this section portrays that more is
39 known about fate and transport of hydraulic fracturing chemicals than is actually known. This section’s
40 discussion is not useful to this chapter because it does not describe the uncertainty about severity of
41 hydraulic fracturing spills. The SAB finds EPA’s descriptions of the classes of chemicals and their range
42 of uses as useful information. However, the SAB recommends that the EPA combine detailed chemical
43 property information with similar information provided elsewhere in the draft Assessment Report (e.g.,
44 Chapter 9). In Chapter 5, the SAB recommends that it is sufficient for the EPA to note that these
45 hydraulic fracturing chemicals “fully occupy” the chemical property space. The SAB also recommends
46 that the EPA minimize the value of the speculative transport scenarios that the EPA assessed and

1 reported on in this chapter. The SAB concludes that there are too many factors affecting the fate of
2 hydraulic fracturing chemicals in the environment for the EPA to use Octanol-Water Partition
3 Coefficient (K_{ow}) as a proxy for relative mobility. These other factors include, for example, fate issues
4 associated with chemicals in mixture, chemicals in non-aqueous phases, and the nature of the
5 environmental media into which these hydraulic fracturing chemicals may be released.

6 **3.3.4. Uncertainties, Assumptions and Limitations**

7
8 *c. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical mixing fully and clearly*
9 *described?*

10
11 The SAB finds that the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical mixing are not
12 fully and clearly described. Data limitations compromise the ability to develop definitive, quantitative
13 conclusions within the draft Assessment Report regarding the frequency and severity of spilled liquids.
14 Data limitations do not constitute evidence that water resources are unaffected; rather, these limitations
15 indicate the lack of inclusion of monitoring information from hydraulic fracturing sites described within
16 the draft Assessment Report, and the lack of a thorough assessment of the uncertainties of each
17 ‘chemical mixing’ section of Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment Report. The details of the monitoring
18 required to assess severity (and not simply what monitoring has already been conducted) is not and
19 should be included in Chapter 5. A further complication is that analytical protocols for many chemicals
20 used in hydraulic fracturing operations do not exist, and the lack of detection of such chemicals does not
21 mean they are not present in the environment. To address these concerns, although the draft Assessment
22 Report is not intended to be a risk analysis, the SAB recommends that the EPA include in this chapter a
23 detailed analysis of the failure rates of the fluid handling equipment and the efficiency of containment
24 measures. Furthermore, within each section of this chapter, the EPA should include a critical assessment
25 of data gaps, statements of what is needed to close those gaps, and an explicit statement of uncertainty
26 associated with the topics covered within these sections.

27 **3.3.5. Additional Information, Background or Context to be Added**

28
29 *d1. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should be*
30 *assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from this stage of the*
31 *HFWC?*

32 Various data, analysis, and reporting gaps occur within this chapter of the draft Assessment Report. The
33 EPA should address each of the following gaps as it revises the draft Assessment Report:

- 34
35 • What qualifies as a ‘spill’ is not defined clearly in the draft document. The draft Assessment
36 Report should include a section on requirements for reporting spills, and the EPA should
37 highlight differences, as they may exist, between state and Federal agencies. For example, the
38 EPA should describe: a) whether there is a spill volume below which a report is not required; and
39 b) whether a report is required if a spill is contained by on-site mitigation measures, and is
40 deemed to not reach the ‘environment’.
- 41 • A primary gap in understanding on the potential impact of the HFWC on drinking water involves
42 the requirement for monitoring of water resources, including analysis of the potentially-affected
43 environmental receptors prior to the initiation of hydraulic fracturing operations. Industry reports
44 spills but the spill data are not all easily accessible, nor is industry-conducted monitoring readily

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

1 available in a convenient electronic format. The reported spill data are likely a subset of all spills
2 (varying by region, and the definition of what constitutes a spill.) and, when reported, the spill
3 data may not be easily accessible or may not constitute the needed range of data to assess the
4 impact on water quality compared to conditions prior to hydraulic fracturing operations. The
5 SAB recommends that the draft Assessment Report include specifications for monitoring
6 requirements before, during and after hydraulic fracturing operations, including types of
7 monitoring wells (i.e., construction specifications), analytical protocols for chemicals, and
8 sampling intervals that would provide the data needed to assess the impact of hydraulic
9 fracturing on water quality (e.g., [see References [1,2] (noted below under the ‘additional types
10 of data sources to consider’ section of this response to charge question 3). The draft Assessment
11 Report should also describe the current monitoring that is occurring during hydraulic fracturing
12 operations and identify gaps compared to a desirable standard.

- 13 • The draft Assessment Report should also identify future research and assessment needs and
14 future field studies, and include in that discussion the EPA’s plans for conducting prospective
15 studies and other research that the EPA had planned to conduct but did not conduct.
- 16 • A quantitative assessment of the frequency and type of equipment failure (e.g., as described
17 further in the response to sub-question 5a, subpoint 2, in this SAB Report).
- 18 • A quantitative assessment of containment failure.
- 19 • An emphasis on the *mass* of chemicals potentially released, not volumes (as indicated in Fig. 5-
20 5).
- 21 • An analysis of the *mass* of chemicals released in spills reported.
- 22 • A clear distinction between spill volume, frequency, severity; and identification of what are the
23 target parameters and how will their values be determined.
- 24 • A clearer discussion of the chemical additives, including: concentrations, behavior in mixture;
25 the effect of uncertainties in additive identity on potential severity; and limitations of property
26 estimation methods.
- 27 • A well-documented case of a spill (perhaps an analogue) that is illustrative of actual risk and
28 consequence.
- 29 • Extension of the chapter’s analysis to updated versions of FracFocus and state reporting systems.
- 30 • An analysis of state response to spills, including: how spills are handled, who responds, the state
31 and federal required actions on spills, and penalties for not reporting.

32
33 In addition, once hydraulic fracturing fluids enter the environment, their transport and fate become
34 highly complex, costly, and uncertain to assess and remediate. The EPA should update the chapter’s
35 discussion to emphasize efforts to contain and prevent hydraulic fracturing spills. The SAB agrees that
36 the types of industrial processes used during hydraulic fracturing ‘mixing’ and delivery operations are
37 not unique to hydraulic fracturing, and recommends that the EPA utilize existing substantial databases
38 from analogous operations to critically ‘rank’ the likelihood of hydraulic fracturing mixing and delivery
39 operations for failure leading to spills. The EPA should describe what kinds of practices have been used
40 and how such practices can impact the frequency and severity of hydraulic fracturing spills during
41 chemical mixing and delivery operations that occur as part of an aboveground, engineered hydraulic
42 fracturing process.

43
44 Also, the discussion in Section 5.8 on fate and transport provides little realistic assessment of the
45 transport of hydraulic fracturing fluids to a drinking water receptor. Hydraulic fracturing spills are not
46 monolithic in type or potential severity, and this section gives the false impression that the transport of

1 spilled fluids through complex earth materials is well understood. The SAB recommends that the EPA
2 include some analogue cases that can provide illustrative examples of a spill and its likely fate in the
3 environment. For example, an industrial spill that would exemplify potential impacts of hydraulic
4 fracturing fluid spills could be included to illustrate key ideas about environmental fate and transport
5 and link it to the types of monitoring systems that should be installed to document and evaluate potential
6 impacts to drinking water from hydraulic fracturing sites. The SAB also suggests that the EPA consider
7 studies from Superfund sites or many of the documented Leaking Underground Storage Tank (LUST)
8 cases as examples of such example spills that the EPA could consider for such an assessment.

9
10 *d2. Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?*

11
12 The SAB recommends that the EPA consider the following additional literature sources within this
13 chapter of the draft Assessment Report:

14
15 **Monitoring:** The following references are examples of publications that discuss approaches to
16 monitoring schemes that are necessarily site-specific. The second reference, a journal, focuses on the
17 topic:

18
19 1. Bunn, A.L., D.M. Wellman, R.A. Deeb, E.L. Hawley, M.J. Truex, M. Peterson, M.D. Freshley,
20 E.M. Pierce, J. McCord, M.H. Young, T.J. Gilmore, R. Miller, A.L. Miracle, D. Kaback, C. Eddy-
21 Dilek, J. Rossabi, M.H. Lee, R.P. Bush, P. Beam, G.M. Chamberlain, J. Marble, L. Whitehurst,
22 K.D. Gerdes, and Y. Collazo. 2012. Scientific opportunities for monitoring at environmental
23 remediation sites (SOMERS): integrated systems-based approaches to monitoring. *U.S. DOE (U.S.*
24 *Department of Energy) DOE/PNNL-21379*. Prepared for Office of Soil and Groundwater
25 Remediation, Office of Environmental Management, U.S. DOE, Washington, D.C., by Pacific
26 Northwest National Laboratory, Richland, WA.

27
28 2. National Groundwater Association, *Groundwater Monitoring and Review*, various articles.

29
30 **Spills:** The following are examples of specific reports of spilled liquids. The article written by Gross,
31 S.A. *et al.*, is referenced within Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment Report; the SAB recommends that the
32 EPA discuss this publication within Chapter 5.

33
34 3. Drollette, B.D., K. Hoelzer, N.R. Warner, T.H. Darrah, O. Karatum, M.P. O'Connor, R.K. Nelson,
35 L.A. Fernandez, C.M. Reddy, A. Vengosh, R.B. Jackson, M. Elsner, and D.L. Plata. 2015. Elevated
36 levels of diesel range organic compounds in groundwater near Marcellus gas operations are derived
37 from surface activities. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 112(43), p. 13184-13189.
38 October 27, 2015. doi/10.1073/pnas.1511474112.

39
40 4. Gross, S.A., H.J. Avens, A.M. Banducci, J. Sahmel, J. Panko, and Tvermou, B.T. 2013. Analysis
41 of BTEX groundwater concentrations form surface spills associates with hydraulic fracturing
42 operations. *J. Air Waste Manag. Assoc.* 63(4), p. 424-432.

43
44 5. New York Times. 2014. Reported Environmental Incidents in North Dakota's Oil Industry. An
45 interactive database by spill type can be found here:

46 <http://www.nytimes.com/interactive/2014/11/23/us/north-dakota-spill-database.html>

1 **Reporting:** Although most State databases are not electronically searchable and thus create a substantial
2 problem in finding and using hydraulic fracturing data, the SAB recommends that Chapter 5 of the draft
3 Assessment Report be revised to include an assessment of state-level reporting efforts, and that the
4 following references be considered by the EPA in this assessment:

5
6 6. North Dakota Department of Health. 2015. Reporting requirements for spills can be found here:
7 <http://www.ndhealth.gov/EHS/Spills/>

8
9 7. Groundwater Protection Council. 2014. *State Oil and Gas Regulation Designed to Protect Water*
10 *Resources*. Groundwater Protection Council.

11
12 **Frequency:** the SAB recommends that Chapter 5 of the draft Assessment Report be revised to
13 substantially update the analysis on the relative frequency of ‘chemical mixing’ spills compared to other
14 types of spilled liquids. The following reference provides information that may support this analysis:

15
16 8. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 2000. *National Water Quality Inventory: 2000 Report*.
17 Chapter 6: Ground Water quality. *United States Environmental Protection Agency Office of Water*,
18 Washington DC 20460. EPA-841-R-02-001. August 2002.

19
20

1 **3.4. Well Injection Stage in the HFWC**

2 *Question 4: The third stage in the HFWC is well injection: the injection of hydraulic fracturing fluids*
3 *into the well to enhance oil and gas production from the geologic formation by creating new fractures*
4 *and dilating existing fractures. This is addressed in Chapter 6.*

- 5 a. *Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning*
6 *well injection, including well construction and well integrity issues and the movement of*
7 *hydraulic fracturing fluids, and other materials in the subsurface?*
8 b. *Are the major findings concerning well injection fully supported by the information and data*
9 *presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to*
10 *drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other major findings that*
11 *have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any*
12 *impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
13 c. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning well injection fully and*
14 *clearly described?*
15 d. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
16 *should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources*
17 *from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be*
18 *added in this section of the report?*

19 Chapter 6 discusses well injection, in particular the injection of hydraulic fracturing fluids into the well
20 to enhance oil and gas production from the geologic formation by creating new fractures and dilating
21 existing fractures. The chapter describes fluid migration pathways within and along hydraulic fracturing
22 production wells, includes an overview of well construction, and discusses hydraulic fracturing fluid
23 movement including fluid migration associated with induced fractures within subsurface formations. It
24 also provides an overview of subsurface fracture growth, discussion on the migration of fluids through
25 pathways related to fractures/formations, and a chapter synthesis of major findings, factors affecting the
26 frequency or severity of impacts, and uncertainties.

27 **3.4.1. General Comments**

28
29 This is a dense and technically complex chapter. The EPA should include more accurate and frequent
30 illustrations, photos, maps, and diagrams in this chapter to help the public better understand the complex
31 issues and technologies discussed.
32

33 A key aspect of minimizing impacts to drinking water resources from the well injection stage of
34 hydraulic fracturing operations is responsible well construction and operation, and isolation of potable
35 water from hydraulic fracturing operations. To accomplish this, the agency should recognize in the draft
36 Assessment Report that the following activities are required: inspection, testing and monitoring of the
37 tubing, tubing-casing annulus and other casing annuli; and monitoring and testing of the potable
38 groundwater through which the tubing, tubing-casing annulus and other casing annuli pass.
39

40 In Chapter 4 of the draft Assessment Report, the EPA used text boxes and case study summaries to
41 illustrate concepts which may be new or unknown to the public. The SAB recommends that the EPA
42 include similar boxes and summaries in Chapter 6 and perhaps other chapters as well, in order to
43 improve the chapter's explanation to the public on what has happened and why, and to help address
44 concerns that have been raised by the public. Furthermore, to understand the issues discussed in this

1 chapter, the general public needs more information regarding borehole construction, geologic
2 parameters and well integrity issues in language that the general public can understand.

3
4 The SAB also provides a general comment regarding this and other chapters of the draft Assessment
5 Report: the chapter should summarize improvements, changes or accomplishments that have occurred
6 since 2012 in hydraulic fracturing operations related to the HFWC. Since 2012, many significant
7 technological and regulatory oversight improvements have occurred related to well construction, well
8 integrity and well injection. These improvements should be examined in the draft Assessment Report.

9
10 Important lessons from carbon capture and storage studies, such as those conducted by and with support
11 of the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE), have shown that well construction and integrity issues are a
12 primary concern with potential releases of chemicals into the environment associated with subsurface
13 storage. The SAB notes that these carbon capture and storage studies have relevance to assessments
14 regarding potential releases from hydraulic fracturing activities. The SAB recommends that the agency
15 examine DOE data and reports on risks of geological storage of CO₂ to water resources and include
16 relevant information in the Assessment Report

17 **3.4.2. Summary of Available Information on Hydraulic Fracturing Well Injection**

18
19 *a. Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning well*
20 *injection, including well construction and well integrity issues and the movement of hydraulic fracturing*
21 *fluids, and other materials in the subsurface?*

22
23 In order to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from the well injection
24 stage of the HFWC, the EPA should further assess available information that will support activities
25 recommended by the SAB within the responses below to sub-questions 4a, 4b and 4c.

26
27 The description of available data and information regarding well construction, injection and well
28 integrity in Chapter 6 is generally well documented, but is geared toward a professional audience. The
29 EPA should revise the text of this chapter of the draft Assessment Report so that the general public can
30 better understand the intricacies of hydraulic fracturing well design and of well integrity issues.

31
32 The chapter's well construction discussion should discuss state regulatory oversight (including recent
33 improvements and developments which have helped make operations safer), mechanical integrity testing
34 of cement and wells, well integrity testing at the time of initial completion, and subsequent monitoring
35 after the many fractures are placed.

36
37 Chapter 6 should include meaningful, accurate and properly scaled diagrams and charts to accompany
38 the text. The relevant appendices linked to this chapter should be expanded to include more well
39 construction, injection and well integrity design information. The EPA should strengthen the chapter's
40 presentation of technical concepts by including by clearer geologic illustrations and improved figures to
41 help the general public understand heterogeneity (e.g., fractures, rock properties, and geologic layering)
42 of the subsurface. The EPA should also fully explain any acronyms that are being used in this chapter
43 since the acronyms are often confusing and presented without elaboration.

1 **3.4.3. Major Findings**

2
3 *b1. Are the major findings concerning well injection fully supported by the information and data*
4 *presented in the assessment?*

5
6 *b2. Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage*
7 *of the HFWC?*

8
9 While most major findings presented by the EPA in Chapter 6 are generally supported by the
10 information and data provided by the EPA, and the major findings presented by the EPA in this chapter
11 identify almost every conceivable impact to drinking water associated with this stage in the HFWC, the
12 chapter's conclusions regarding how many hydraulic fracturing wells are or are not leaking are not well
13 supported by analyses or other information presented and should be revised. The EPA should also more
14 clearly state the findings of this chapter, and the chapter's conclusions should flow clearly from those
15 specific findings. Before drawing conclusions on water quality impacts associated with this HFWC step,
16 the EPA should:

- 17 • More clearly describe the probability, risk, and relative significance of potential hydraulic
18 fracturing-related failure mechanisms, and the frequency of occurrence and most likely
19 magnitude and/or probability of risk of water quality impacts, associated with this stage in the
20 HFWC.
- 21 • Include a discussion of recent state hydraulic fracturing well design standards, required
22 mechanical integrity testing in wells, new technologies and fracture fluid mixes, and state
23 regulatory standards that have changed the probability of risk of water quality impacts associated
24 with this stage in the HFWC.
- 25 • Include an analysis and discussion on low frequency, high severity hydraulic fracturing case
26 studies and example situations.

27
28 In order to improve the presentation and identification of major findings in Chapter 6, the EPA should
29 improve the chapter's discussion and provide a hierarchy and prioritization regarding what are the most
30 important first order factors and effects vs. second and third order factors and effects associated with the
31 potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing well construction, well integrity and well injection on drinking
32 water resources. For example, the EPA should discuss first and second order factors and effects
33 regarding the severity and frequency of potential impacts from poor hydraulic fracturing cementation
34 techniques, hydraulic fracturing operator error, migration of hydraulic fracturing chemicals from the
35 deep subsurface, and abandoned hydraulic fracturing wells (including likelihood of impacts, number of
36 abandoned wells, and plugging issues associated with such wells). The SAB recommends that the EPA
37 prioritize and improve the discussion of conclusions regarding frequency and severity of impacts, and
38 describe high vs. low probability of impacts, and what the EPA considers high vs. low probability
39 impacts. The EPA should include a summary figure that includes axes of probability vs. impact within
40 this analysis.

41
42 On pages 6-56 and 6-57 of this chapter, the EPA includes the following major finding: "*Given the surge*
43 *in the number of modern high-pressure hydraulic fracturing operations dating from the early 2000s,*
44 *evidence of any fracturing-related fluid migration affecting a drinking water resource (as well as the*
45 *information necessary to connect specific well operation practices to a drinking water impact) could*
46 *take years to discover."* The EPA should provide additional information regarding this finding, and
47 further describe the basis for making this statement.

1
2 Also, the last sentence of the conclusory discussion in Section 6.4.4. on page 6-57 states: “*Evidence*
3 *shows that the quality of drinking water resources may have been affected by hydraulic fracturing fluids*
4 *escaping the wellbore and surrounding formation in certain areas, although conclusive evidence is*
5 *currently limited.*” The SAB recommends that the EPA revise this sentence since this conclusory
6 sentence is internally contradictory and describes situations where actual effects have occurred in certain
7 areas that should not be extrapolated to the nation or world as a whole.

8
9 *b3. Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward?*

10
11 While the major findings for Chapter 6 are supported by the information and data and do identify almost
12 every conceivable impact to drinking water resources, the EPA did not bring forward assessments of the
13 likelihood and commonality of possible impacts to drinking water resources associated with hydraulic
14 fracturing well construction, well integrity and well injection. Also, there are several issues regarding
15 cement and casing, spatial and temporal considerations, and stray gas that are critical to ensuring
16 hydraulic fracturing well integrity that the EPA should further assess; these issues are further described
17 below. The EPA’s further assessment on these issues may result in additional major findings within this
18 chapter of the draft Assessment Report.

19
20 Cement and Casing

21
22 The SAB finds that cement integrity, initially and over time, is critical to ensuring hydraulic fracturing
23 well integrity, and hydraulic fracturing cement integrity and issues surrounding such integrity have not
24 been well defined in Chapter 6 of the draft Assessment Report. Also, design principles associated with
25 hydraulic fracturing cement integrity are absent from the draft Assessment Report and should be
26 included to help the public better understand the issues surrounding hydraulic fracturing cement
27 integrity.

28
29 The highest priority for improving the EPA’s hydraulic fracturing cement and casing discussion in the
30 draft Assessment Report is for the EPA to rewrite and better describe recommendations and
31 requirements for mechanical integrity testing in wells prior to and during hydraulic fracturing
32 operations. While these tests are mentioned in the footnotes of Chapter 6, the EPA should specifically
33 discuss the importance of conducting these tests in the text of Chapter 6, or highlight these tests in a text
34 box that the EPA could include in this chapter. The SAB recommends that the draft Assessment Report
35 mention that: a) these tests are vitally important to conduct in order to ensure hydraulic fracturing well
36 integrity; b) these tests, along with cement bond log analyses, should be conducted before a well is
37 hydraulically fractured and also on a periodic basis through the life of the hydraulic fracturing well in
38 order to ensure hydraulic fracturing well integrity; and c) if these tests fail, remedial activity should be
39 conducted before further hydraulic fracturing operations can proceed. The SAB also suggests that the
40 EPA include a figure in the draft Assessment Report that depicts a cement bond log that indicates good
41 cement bonding, no cement bonding, and partial bonding. The SAB suggests that the EPA consider use
42 of a diagram published by the Society of Petroleum Engineers on this topic (Society of Petroleum
43 Engineers, 2013).

44
45 Since the quality, placement and type of cement is critical towards ensuring hydraulic fracturing cement
46 integrity, the EPA should improve the draft Assessment Report’s discussion on the various classes of
47 cements used as well as different types of casings for hydraulic fracturing wells. The EPA should

1 include a diagram that illustrates typical cementation practices both in active as well as in abandoned
2 wells. Regarding abandoned wells, the EPA should provide a diagram of an abandoned well with typical
3 placement of cement, and include discussion indicating that abandoned wells are typically cemented.
4

5 The EPA should also include more information on aging hydraulic fracturing wells, re-fracturing
6 hydraulic fracturing wells, and use of acids in old wells (and whether use of such acids degrades old
7 cement), and include statements on whether these wells and hydraulic fracturing activities result in
8 potential impacts to drinking water resources. The EPA should also improve the discussion and
9 emphasis regarding the use of evaluation methodologies (e.g., cement bond logs, temperature logs,
10 acoustic and circumferential bond logs, and pressure testing) and limitations of such methodologies in
11 assessing hydraulic fracturing cement and casing integrity.
12

13 The SAB finds that databases and data on hydraulic fracturing cement and casing integrity exist, and
14 that while these databases have not generally been readily accessible this situation appears to be
15 improving. The EPA should note in Chapter 6 the benefits to be gained through industry disclosure and
16 sharing of specific data on hydraulic fracturing cement and casing integrity in order to increase
17 transparency on issues associated with this topic.
18

19 The SAB also notes that the EPA can reduce uncertainties associated with hydraulic fracturing cement
20 and casing integrity by examining and assessing more or all of the 20,000 well files referenced in the
21 draft Assessment Report. The SAB also recommends that the EPA conduct full statistical analyses on
22 such an expanded Well File Review, and include graphs or tables associated with such analyses into the
23 draft Assessment Report.
24

25 Within Chapter 6 of the draft Assessment Report, the EPA should also describe available new research
26 and technology that has been developed since 2010 with respect to cements, low thermal gradient setting
27 times, swellable elastomers and flexible cements. The EPA should describe how available and
28 widespread are the uses of these technologies, whether the availability and use of these technologies
29 affects the temporal variation of occurrence of problems associated with cement and well integrity, and
30 whether any, some, or most of the identified impacts associated with cement and well integrity have
31 been or could be mitigated by such technologies.
32

33 The EPA should also better explain how pressure diffusion in Karst limestone formations and in porous
34 zones adjacent to shales can be critical in diffusing migration pathways associated with installation and
35 cementing practices of hydraulic fracturing wells. The EPA should improve the discussion to note that
36 these pathways are complex and that porous zones can help diffuse pressures. This discussion should
37 also describe the various difficulties associated with cementing hydraulic fracturing wells in such zones.
38

39 Furthermore, within Chapter 6 the EPA should avoid the use of words such as “conduits” to describe
40 minute cracks and fissures, since mechanical discontinuities occur on a range of scales and not all
41 cracks/fissures are as large-scale as implied by words such as “conduits.”
42

43 Spatial and Temporal Issues 44

45 Within Chapter 6 of the draft Assessment Report, the EPA should improve the discussion on how the
46 manner by which hydraulic fracturing wells are completed may affect how gas escapes from the
47 hydraulic fracturing well, and how methods for hydraulic fracturing well completion have improved

1 over time to help mitigate such gas release incidences. The EPA should include a summary of temporal
2 and spatial variations associated with hydraulic fracturing-related gas release incidences that have
3 occurred, and the SAB concludes that such information would help to address many public concerns on
4 this topic. The SAB recommends that at a minimum, the EPA should report the dates of such incidences
5 (which may be noted on the collected data and from the literature review) so that such temporal
6 conclusions may be drawn or inferred.

7
8 The EPA describes many timeframes in Chapter 6 but does not adequately differentiate or discuss these
9 timeframes. The period of fluid injection to fracture the source rock may be hours or days for each
10 fractured well segment; in contrast, the flow of oil and/or gas back into the well lasts for the entire
11 production life of the well, which can be many years. Since hydraulic fracturing has a short time
12 duration (hours/days) and post-fracturing produced water collection and disposal are performed over
13 many years, the EPA should consider including and discussing a bar graph that summarizes the duration
14 of different hydraulic fracturing events. Such a summary would provide clarity on the difference in the
15 duration of these stresses and the difference in the duration of fluid flow directions oriented away from
16 and into the well. To this end, the EPA should consider including and discussing a graph such as the one
17 suggested by SAB HF Panel member Dr. Scott Bair in his preliminary individual Panel member
18 comments for Charge Question 4.¹

19
20 The EPA should include information regarding the spatial proximity of wells to each other and to water
21 sources and to known geologic faults in order to help the public better understand the physical situation
22 in which hydraulic fracturing well injection is conducted. In addition, the SAB notes that statistical
23 information on hydraulic fracturing well data summaries is generally not available, and the EPA should
24 provide more information on the three-dimensional nature and aspects of well injection in the HFWC.

25 26 Stray Gas

27
28 The EPA should expand the stray gas migration discussion in Chapter 6 on techniques that can be used
29 to identify the source of stray gas using such as noble gas tracers, and more clearly describe the
30 pathways for such migration. While the draft Assessment Report accurately describes the general state
31 of the art of these techniques, and describes variations in stray gas with respect to different types of oil
32 and gas production (e.g., coal bed methane), the science of stray gas migration and analysis is described
33 only briefly and should be rewritten to include greater clarification on the topic. For example, in its
34 descriptions of situations where hydraulic fracturing wells may not be properly cased and cemented, the
35 EPA should distinguish between fracture-related gas vs. stray gas that may migrate naturally through
36 formations.

37

¹ See SAB's October 28-30, 2015 meeting website for these posted individual SAB Panel member comments, at the following website address:
<http://yosemite.epa.gov/sab/sabproduct.nsf/a84bfee16cc358ad85256ccd006b0b4b/26216d9fbba8784385257e4a00499ea0!OpenDocument&Date=2015-10-28>.

1 **3.4.4. Frequency or Severity of Impacts**

2
3 *b4. Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and*
4 *fully supported?*

5
6 The SAB finds that a significant improvement needed within Chapter 6 is that the EPA should clarify
7 the probabilities associated with the frequency and severity of impacts to drinking water resources
8 associated with various stages of the hydraulic fracturing well injection process. While the chapter
9 generally does an excellent job of explaining the various possible situations that may occur that would
10 result in a release from the well injection process that may result in an impact to drinking water
11 resources, the chapter should provide a more focused, improved discussion on the likelihood, frequency,
12 magnitude, and severity of such impacts. The text, if not modified, would leave the reader to deduce or
13 make incorrect inferences regarding such impacts. The EPA should clarify in Chapter 6 what is known
14 about the frequency and the severity of such impacts, and should not state that the EPA is unable to
15 assess such impact or severity.

16
17 As recommended in the following paragraphs, the EPA should further assess data that are available in
18 order to improve the discussion on likelihood, frequency, magnitude, and severity of such impacts. The
19 anecdotal data on this topic that are described within the draft Assessment Report, while well described
20 and very fully documented, is not statistical in nature, and therefore conclusions on severity of impact
21 are difficult to assess. Conclusions as to severity and risk based on such data should be developed after
22 these and other data are assessed. The chapter's discussion on this topic leaves the reader with high
23 uncertainty on the frequency and severity of impacts, and whether any impacts can happen at any
24 location at any time. The SAB notes that there are hydraulic fracturing-related issues that have arisen
25 that should be identified, prioritized and described within this chapter in order to reduce uncertainties
26 and help identify methods to minimize impacts of the well injection stage of the HFWC..

27
28 Chapter 6 does not quantify the number of impacts described in the literature associated with the well
29 injection stage of the HFWC. While the draft Assessment Report states that there is inadequate data to
30 quantify the frequency or severity of such impacts, available literature and research presented in the
31 draft Assessment Report did uncover a limited number of impacts. In addition, the EPA's Well File
32 Review that is described in Text Box 6.1 on page 6-6 of the draft Assessment Report statistically
33 examined a number of well files selected from over 20,000 wells. The SAB notes that the EPA can
34 reduce uncertainties associated with hydraulic fracturing cement and casing integrity by examining and
35 assessing more or all of the 20,000 well files referenced in the draft Assessment Report, and use this
36 information to help assess the frequency of impacts relative to the number of hydraulic fracturing wells.
37 The SAB also recommends that the EPA conduct full statistical analyses on such an expanded Well File
38 Review, and include graphs or tables associated with such analyses into the draft Assessment Report.

39
40 The EPA should carefully distinguish studies that “presume” that impacts are caused anthropogenically
41 since the actual causes of such impacts may be natural (fault seepage) or due to historical events (such as
42 releases from old, abandoned wells). The SAB recommends that the EPA rely on scientifically sound
43 peer-reviewed papers (e.g., the paper by Darrah et al., 2014, that is cited in the draft Assessment Report)
44 that identify sources of migrated gases based on isotopic and compositional analysis of the gas to
45 identify the actual causes of such impacts, and that do not attempt to eliminate natural pathways based
46 on assumptions that are not scientifically justified.

1 Section 6.4.1.3 of the draft Assessment Report describes several cases of documented impacts, and
2 clarifies that the causes may be inconclusive. The SAB recommends that the EPA describe the
3 frequency of such impacts relative to the number of wells, even though some of these impacts are not
4 documented to have occurred from hydraulic fracturing activities.

5
6 The EPA should expand the stray gas migration discussion in Chapter 6 on techniques used to identify
7 the source of stray gas using such as noble gas tracers, and to describe more clearly the pathways for
8 such migration. The EPA should discuss publications describing cases of such migration, and evaluate
9 the veracity of conclusions drawn in these studies. The EPA provided a good discussion on Page 6-2 of
10 the complexity and challenges associated with differentiating stray gas migration due to hydraulic
11 fracturing activities from numerous potential natural and anthropogenic processes of gas, and the many
12 potential natural occurring or man-made routes that may exist for such migration.

13
14 Distinguishing sources and pathways for gas resulting from casing failure versus from natural migration
15 in faults or from unknown abandoned wells is typically difficult, and assessments of source and
16 migration path often result in conflicting expert opinions. Beginning on page 6-16 in Section 6.2.2.1 in
17 Text Box 6-2, the draft Assessment Report states that new noble gas and hydrocarbon stable isotope data
18 can be used to distinguish these sources and pathways. The SAB agrees that clear evidence of the
19 existence of these pathways is needed in order to make sound conclusions on those sources and
20 pathways.

21
22 It is stated in Chapter 6 that methane occurs naturally in many aquifers and that methane from different
23 sources (i.e., significantly different formations and/or depths) can often be distinguished isotopically or
24 compositionally. The text should be modified to clarify that the increase of methane alone in a hydraulic
25 fracturing well is not a good indicator of a release from a hydraulic fracturing well. The text should also
26 note that the best method for confirming cause and effect of methane releases is pre-drilling baseline
27 sampling and post-drilling sampling of well fluids, combined with use of isotope and compositional
28 analysis methods and knowledge of the existing or perturbed natural pathways.

29 30 Modeling (Fluid Flow and Induced Seismicity)

31
32 The EPA should improve the description and presentation in Chapter 6 of the objectives, designs,
33 limitations and conclusions of the models and simulations that support analysis of the well injection
34 stage of the HFWC. The EPA's modeling assessment report associated with this stage of the HFWC
35 only studied the injection of fluid over a short period of time under hydrostatic conditions. The EPA
36 should describe additional project modeling work that is forthcoming. The SAB is concerned that the
37 draft Assessment Report presents a confusing description regarding how the EPA uses actual data (e.g.,
38 pressure data, water chemistry data or other measured parameters) to describe situations where hydraulic
39 fracturing fluids reach drinking water resources, vs. how the EPA uses modeling predictions of such
40 occurrences to describe these situations. In the descriptions of the models and simulation results the EPA
41 should clarify that the models are interpretive and are based on a generic geologic system, generic
42 fracturing stress, a specified hydraulic gradient, and generic physical rock properties.

43
44 Section 6.2.2 of the draft Assessment Report inappropriately uses the word "evidence" with regard to
45 modeling. In the descriptions of the models for fracture propagation and fluid migration introduced and
46 discussed in this chapter, the EPA should clarify that these model predictions and results are not
47 evidence, and fully and clearly describe the limitations of such models. The EPA should state that the

1 interpretation of such model predictions is not evidence, and that predictive models try to match
2 something in nature. The EPA should fully and clearly describe the limitations of such models, and note
3 that the modeling results do not represent actual sites nor all combinations of stresses, gradients, rock
4 properties, typical geology, and heterogeneity (e.g., fractures, rock properties, and geologic layering).
5 Regarding typical geology, the SAB recommends that the EPA include a discussion on the importance
6 of understanding the regional geology of an area prior to embarking on installing a hydraulic fracturing
7 well or drilling into a play where hydraulic fracturing will be involved. This discussion should include
8 the importance of describing the rocks, the hydrocarbon charge (entry mechanism) and maturation in the
9 reservoir, the overall degree and complexity of deformation, the extent of separation from base potable
10 ground water to the objective producing section, and geothermal and stress field gradients.

11
12 In addition, the EPA should provide more or improved figures to illustrate each model/scenario
13 described in Chapter 6. The EPA should add a description of the modeling assumptions and the
14 strengths and weaknesses of any modeling parameters, and should make clear that the models described
15 only provide insights that depend on the quality of input data and the assumed physics.

16
17 The chapter's description of natural fractures and the nature of induced vs. natural fractures is brief and
18 should be rewritten to include more clarity and information. The EPA should gather data that are
19 abundantly available from industry, academia and service companies regarding how fractures grow and
20 whether fractures are likely to reach ground surfaces, and describe such data and analysis in the draft
21 Assessment Report.

22
23 The SAB notes that Figure 6-1 misleadingly depicts what appears to be a fresh water zone behind an
24 uncemented intermediate casing string. The SAB recommends that Figure 6-1 be revised since it does
25 not depict a realistic scenario of current industry practice.

26
27 While Figure 6-5 is a potentially helpful pictorial guide for the well injection stage of the HFWC, the
28 EPA should describe the complexity of the subsurface geology and well construction within the chapter
29 in the interpretation of this figure. In addition, Figure 6-5 should be revised to address the misleading
30 distances and scale and oversimplified geology associated with the figure. The EPA should also describe
31 a typical industry injection rate and pressure plot for a hydraulic fracturing injection as a function of
32 time, as related to Figure 6-5, and include the entire fall-off period within this description.

33
34 The SAB notes that models such as "StimPlan" have tried to create conditions to allow a fracture to
35 grow to intersect base potable water, and concludes that no model has successfully created such
36 conditions for any realistic scenarios.

37
38 The conclusory discussion on pages 6-54 and 6-55 notes that: "*The extent of subsurface fluid migration*
39 *within subsurface rock formations and the potential for the development of pathways that can adversely*
40 *affect drinking water depend on site-specific characteristics.*" The text also notes that: "*Based on the*
41 *information presented in this chapter, the increased deployment of hydraulic fracturing associated with*
42 *oil and gas production activities, including techniques such as horizontal drilling and multi-well pads,*
43 *may increase the likelihood that these pathways could develop. This, in turn, could lead to increased*
44 *opportunities for impacts on drinking water resources.*" The discussion surrounding this text notes that
45 fractures created during hydraulic fracturing can extend out of the target production zone and upwardly
46 migrate. The SAB finds that these statements are not supported or linked to data or modeling presented

1 in the body of the draft Assessment Report, and the EPA should delete these conclusions from the draft
2 Assessment Report unless the EPA supports these statements with such data or modeling.

3
4 In addition, the draft Assessment Report should include some discussion about what is known regarding
5 induced seismicity and impacts on drinking water resources associated with hydraulic fracturing
6 activity. Detailed discussion of induced seismicity from wastewater disposal should be reserved for
7 Chapter 8 which is focused on wastewater treatment and disposal. Since 2009 a significant increase in
8 induced seismicity has been noted in Texas, Oklahoma, Ohio, and other states, and this induced
9 seismicity has been typically linked to high-rate disposal injection wells and not hydraulic fracturing
10 wells. Induced seismicity from well injection for hydraulic fracturing should be distinguished from
11 induced seismicity associated with hydraulic fracturing wastewater disposal via Class II deepwell
12 injection. The SAB notes that there have been reports of slightly higher magnitude seismicity at
13 hydraulic fracturing sites (up to Magnitude 4+ in Alberta and British Columbia as well as Ohio)
14 (Fischetti, M., 2012; Skoumal, R.J., et al., 2015; Holland, A., 2011; Horner, R. B., et al., 1994; and
15 Perry, S.A., et al., 2011). The SAB recommends that the EPA include better documentation within this
16 chapter on the occurrence and any causal factors of such events (e.g. increased rates or volumes of
17 injection in BC and Alberta). The SAB also recommends that the EPA describe information on available
18 micro-seismic data and how such data may impact assessments regarding induced seismicity. Although
19 the SAB recognizes that induced seismicity at hydraulic fracturing sites is anticipated to be a rare
20 occurrence, the EPA should have improved documentation and monitoring data from when such events
21 do occur. The SAB therefore recommends that the EPA discuss in the draft Assessment Report the
22 importance of continual seismic monitoring at new hydraulic fracturing sites or hydraulic fracturing sites
23 that have the potential for elevated seismicity to further assess induced seismicity risks.

24 **3.4.5. Uncertainties, Assumptions and Limitations**

25
26 *c. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning well injection fully and clearly*
27 *described?*

28
29 Overall, while Chapter 6 discusses many hydraulic fracturing well injection technologies and scenarios
30 and possibilities, the chapter should describe the uncertainties, assumptions and limitations of the data
31 and the use of data associated with well injection. In addition, this chapter should include an assessment
32 on the probability or likelihood of occurrence of impacts to drinking water resources from well injection.
33 Such an assessment would improve the readers' understanding of uncertainties associated with this
34 chapter.

35
36 The EPA should more clearly describe the uncertainties associated with the probability, risk, and relative
37 significance of potential hydraulic fracturing-related failure mechanisms, and the frequency of
38 occurrence and most likely magnitude of water quality impacts associated with the well injection stage
39 of the HFWC. In particular, the EPA should provide more information on the relative probability of
40 scenarios presented for potential impacts of the well injection stage of the HFWC, since the text treats
41 all possible scenarios equally which is unlikely. Specific examples of possible improvements are
42 discussed in the following paragraphs.

43
44 The discussion in Chapter 6 on the frequency and severity of impacts associated with the well injection
45 stage of the HFWC leaves the reader with high uncertainty on the frequency and severity of impacts, and
46 whether any impacts can happen at any location at any time. The EPA should identify, prioritize and

1 describe hydraulic fracturing-related issues that have arisen in regard to well injection in order to reduce
2 uncertainties and help identify methods to minimize impacts of the well injection stage of the HFWC.

3
4 As described above within the response to sub-questions 4b1 and 4b2, the SAB finds that cement
5 integrity, initially and over time, is critical to ensuring hydraulic fracturing well integrity, and that the
6 limited discussion on hydraulic fracturing cement integrity and issues surrounding such integrity within
7 Chapter 6 increase the uncertainties associated with how cement integrity may affect impacts to drinking
8 water resources. The EPA should describe the uncertainties surrounding hydraulic fracturing well
9 cementing integrity. The EPA should also discuss how mechanical integrity testing in wells prior to and
10 during hydraulic fracturing operations would lessen the uncertainties associated with hydraulic
11 fracturing well cementing integrity. The SAB also notes that the EPA can reduce uncertainties
12 associated with hydraulic fracturing cement and casing integrity by examining and assessing more or all
13 of the 20,000 well files referenced in the draft Assessment Report. The SAB also recommends that the
14 EPA conduct full statistical analyses on such an expanded Well File Review, and include graphs or
15 tables associated with such analyses into the draft Assessment Report.

16
17 As also described above within the response to sub-questions 4b1 and 4b2, the SAB finds that the draft
18 Assessment Report should not make definitive statements regarding whether some or all hydraulic
19 fracturing wells are or are not leaking due to uncertainties associated with the EPA's analysis on
20 hydraulic fracturing well integrity.

21 **3.4.6. Additional Information, Background or Context to be Added**

22
23 *d1. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should be*
24 *assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from this stage of the*
25 *HFWC?*

26
27 In order to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from the well injection
28 stage of the HFWC, the EPA should conduct the various recommended activities suggested above
29 within the responses to Charge Questions 4a and 4b. Wastewater injection and detailed discussion of
30 induced seismicity from wastewater disposal should be reserved for Chapter 8 which is focused on
31 wastewater treatment and disposal.

32
33 The EPA should also further assess hydraulic fracturing case studies, conduct and assess hydraulic
34 fracturing water quality measurements, describe new hydraulic fracturing technologies, assess hydraulic
35 fracturing-related impacts from a systems view, and describe regulatory improvements associated with
36 hydraulic fracturing, as further discussed below.

37 Case Studies

38
39
40 The EPA should include a discussion within Chapter 6 on the strengths and weaknesses of available case
41 studies for well injection activities. The EPA should clarify known data, inferences, and the success of
42 remedial activities that may have occurred associated with these case studies. The EPA describes two
43 case studies in the chapter: Bainbridge, OH (which was a cement failure and not related to hydraulic
44 fracturing injection) (Bair, E.S., et al., 2010); and Kildeer, ND (which was a blowout that happened
45 coincidentally, but was not related to hydraulic fracturing injection) (Battelle, 2013). While these cases

1 are interesting and tangentially relevant, these cases are not directly related to the hydraulic fracturing
2 injection process.

3
4 However, the SAB finds that the agency should include and fully explain the status, data on potential
5 releases, and findings if available for the EPA and state investigations conducted in Dimock,
6 Pennsylvania, Pavillion, Wyoming, and Parker County, Texas where hydraulic fracturing activities are
7 perceived by many members of the public to have caused impacts to drinking water resources.
8 Examination of these high-visibility cases is important so that the public can understand the status of
9 investigations in these areas, conclusions associated with the investigations, lessons learned for
10 hydraulic fracturing practice if any, plans for remediation if any, and the degree to which information
11 from these case studies can be extrapolated to other locations.

12
13 While the EPA describes casing and cement issues causing gas migration behind pipes, the SAB
14 recommends that the EPA provide specific examples of such issues.

15 Water Measurements

16
17
18 The EPA should assess and describe background/baseline or pre-drilling activity water quality data
19 measurements that have been collected in order to better understand scenarios where impacts have been
20 indicated. The SAB notes that this information is important to understand since it provides a baseline
21 reference on what was in the water surrounding hydraulic fracturing sites before human intervention
22 occurred. The State of Colorado is now requiring sampling and measurement prior to and after all oil
23 and gas drilling activity (State of Colorado, 2014). The EPA should describe best management practices
24 associated with the well injection stage of the HFWC within Chapter 6, and cite the State of Colorado
25 sampling and measurement requirements within this discussion.

26
27 As discussed further in the response to Charge Question 7, the EPA should also characterize the toxicity
28 and mobility of the most important hydraulic fracturing chemicals of concern that are injected into
29 hydraulic fracturing wells. The EPA should also be careful to distinguish between hydraulic fracturing
30 chemicals injected into a hydraulic fracturing well vs. chemicals and hydrocarbons that come back out
31 of the hydraulic fracturing well in produced fluids.

32
33 The EPA should also discuss in Chapter 6 what is known about the fate of un-recovered fracture fluids
34 that are injected into hydraulic fracturing wells. The EPA should describe and include an assessment on
35 where these fluids go if they do not come back to the surface.

36
37 The SAB notes that the general public usually does not distinguish between hydraulic fracturing
38 flowback and hydraulic fracturing produced water, and recommends that the agency reconsider its
39 decision to distinguish between these waters within the draft Assessment Report. The EPA should also
40 describe what is meant by produced water and whether this water comes from hydraulic fracturing
41 and/or from non-HF activities. The EPA should also consider moving Chapter 6's discussion on
42 flowback and produced water to Chapter 7.

43 Technology

44
45
46 The EPA should include discussions of new hydraulic fracturing technologies that relate to the
47 protection of drinking water resources and are associated with the well injection stage of the HFWC,

1 including: cement bond logs, acoustic logs used to “hear” gas movement such as spectral noise testing,
2 cement development technologies, and monitoring technologies. For example, new cement designs and
3 swellable elastomers are being used in the hydraulic fracturing industry but are not and should be
4 described within Chapter 6. In addition, many states require the use of newer “greener” hydraulic
5 fracturing technologies and the EPA should consider adding a discussion on such technologies to this
6 chapter.

7 8 Systems View

9
10 In order to identify and list the highest probability and highest magnitude issues associated with the well
11 injection stage of the HFWC, and distinguish what is naturally occurring and what is anthropogenically
12 induced, the SAB recommends that the EPA undertake a systems approach towards identifying these
13 issues. Such an approach would assess an engineered hydraulic fracturing system coupled to a
14 heterogeneous natural system, and identify leading causes of failures in the engineered hydraulic
15 fracturing systems. It would also assess which activities are or are not common to all oil and gas
16 development, and which problems are uniquely caused by hydraulic fracturing-related activity. The
17 approach would distinguish which issues arise from the natural earth and which may have been
18 anthropogenically induced, identify systemic failures, and describe heterogeneities and site-specific
19 variations in natural systems. The EPA could identify actionable issues within the findings of such a
20 systems analysis.

21 22 Regulatory Improvements

23
24 The EPA should discuss state standards and regulations that have improved hydraulic fracturing
25 operations associated with the well injection stage of the HFWC. The SAB recommends that the EPA
26 discuss the evolution of oilfield and state regulatory practices that are relevant to hydraulic fracturing
27 operations, as the evolution of such practices is not described adequately in Chapter 6. The EPA should
28 describe best and worst management practices associated with state standards and regulations related to
29 the well injection stage of the HFWC. The EPA should consider hydraulic fracturing-related standards
30 and regulations within a few key states such as Pennsylvania, Wyoming, Texas, Colorado and California
31 who all have implemented new hydraulic fracturing-related regulations since 2012. The EPA should also
32 more accurately describe changes in such standards and regulations as an “evolution” vs.
33 “improvement” in these state regulations.

34
35 An additional activity that the EPA should consider conducting as a future research need is an
36 assessment on whether new hydraulic fracturing well construction standards have lowered the frequency
37 and severity of potential impact of hydraulic fracturing well injection on drinking water resources.

38
39 *d2. Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?*

40
41 The SAB recommends that the EPA consider the following additional literature sources within this
42 chapter of the draft Assessment Report:

43 Balashov, V.N., T. Engelder, X. Gu, M.S. Fantle, and S.L. Brantley. 2015. A model describing flowback
44 chemistry changes with time after Marcellus Shale hydraulic fracturing. *American Association of*
45 *Petroleum Geologists Bulletin* 99(1), 143-154. January 2015. doi: 110.1306/06041413119.

- 1
2 Blanton, T. L. 1982. An experimental study of interaction between hydraulically induced and pre-
3 existing fractures, *SPE Unconventional Gas Recovery Symposium*, 16-18 May, Pittsburgh,
4 Pennsylvania, 1982. *Society of Petroleum Engineers Publication* SPE-10847-MS.
5
6 Bui, B. T. and A.N. Tutuncu. 2013. Modeling the Failure of Cement Sheath in Anisotropic Stress Field,
7 *Society of Petroleum Engineers Publication* SPE 167178.
8
9 Lee, H.P., J.E. Olson, J. Holder, J.F.W. Gale, and R. D. Myers. 2015. The interaction of propagating
10 opening mode fractures with preexisting discontinuities in shale. *Journal of Geophysical Research*
11 120(1), p. 169-181. January 2015. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/2014JB011358>.
12
13 Llewellyn, G., F.L. Dorman, J.L. Westland, D. Yoxthimer, P. Grieve, T. Sowers, E. Humston-Flumer,
14 and S.L. Brantley. 2015. Evaluating a groundwater supply contamination incident attributed to
15 Marcellus Shale gas development. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 112(20), 6325-
16 6330. May 19, 2015. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1420279112.
17
18 Montague, J. A., and G.F. Pinder. 2015, Potential of hydraulically induced fractures to communicate
19 with existing wellbores. *American Geophysical Union Water Resour. Res.* 51. September 18, 2015.
20 doi:10.1002/2014WR016771.
21
22 Olson, J.E., B. Bahorich, and J. Holder. 2012. Examining hydraulic fracture: Natural fracture interaction
23 in hydrostone block experiments. *Society of Petroleum Engineers Publication* SPE-152618-MS, SPE
24 Hydraulic Fracturing Technology Conference, 6-8 February, The Woodlands, Texas, USA, 2012.
25
26 Parmar, J., H. Dehghanpour, and E. Kuru. 2012. Unstable displacement, A missing factor in fracturing
27 fluid recovery. *Society of Petroleum Engineers Publication* SPE-162649-MS, SPE Canadian
28 Unconventional Resources Conferences, 30 October-1 November, 2012, Calgary, Alberta, Canada.
29
30 Parmar, J., H. Dehghanpour, and E. Kuru. 2014. Displacement of water by gas in propped fractures:
31 Combined effects of gravity, surface tension, and wettability. *Journal of Unconventional Oil and Gas*
32 *Resources* 5, p. 10-21. March 2014. DOI: 10.1016/j.juogr.2013.11.005.
33
34 Tutuncu, A.N. and B.T. Bui. 2015. Coupled Geomechanical and Fluid Flow Modeling for Injection
35 Induced Seismicity Prediction, *85th Society of Exploration Geophysicists Annual Meeting Proceedings*,
36 SEG 2015 SS 2.2, p. 4848-4852.
37
38 Tutuncu, A. N. 2014. Microseismic Coupled Geomechanical Modeling for Environmental Risk
39 Evaluation in Shale Reservoir Developments. *International Society for Rock Mechanics Publication*
40 ARMS8-2014-325, ISRM Conference Paper.
41
42 Wang, W. and A. Dahi Taleghani. 2014. Cement sheath integrity during hydraulic fracturing; An
43 integrated modeling approach. *Society of Petroleum Engineers Publication* SPE-168642-MS, SPE
44 Hydraulic Fracturing Technology Conference, 4-6 February, 2014, The Woodlands, Texas, USA.
45 <http://dx.doi.org/10.2118/168642-MS>.
46

- 1 Warpinski, N. R., J. Du, and U. Zimmer. 2012. Measurements of Hydraulic-Fracture-Induced Seismicity
2 in Gas Shales. *Society of Petroleum Engineers Publication* SPE-151597, SPE Prod. Operations, V. 27,
3 p. 240-252. doi: 10.2118/151597-PA.
4
- 5 Weingarten, M., Ge S., Godt J., Bekins B.A. and Rubinstein J.L. 2015. High-rate injection is associated
6 with the increase in U.S. mid-continent seismicity. *Science* 348(6241), p.1336-1339, June 19, 2015.
7
- 8 Wilson, B. 2014. Geologic and baseline groundwater evidence for naturally occurring, shallowly
9 sourced, thermogenic gas in northeastern Pennsylvania. *American Association of Petroleum Geologists*
10 *Bulletin* 98(2), p. 373–394. February 2014. doi: 10.1306/08061312218
11
- 12 Zoback, M.D, Rummel, F., Jung, R. and C.B. Raleigh. 1977. Laboratory hydraulic fracturing
13 experiments in intact and pre-fractured rock. *International Journal of Rock Mechanics and Mining*
14 *Sciences & Geomechanics Abstracts* 14(2), p. 49-58. March 1977. doi: 10.1016/0148-9062(77)90196-6.

1 **3.5. Flowback and Produced Water Stage in the HFWC**

2 *Question 5: The fourth stage in the HFWC focuses on flowback and produced water: the return of*
3 *injected fluid and water produced from the formation to the surface and subsequent transport for reuse,*
4 *treatment, or disposal. This is addressed in Chapter 7.*

- 5 a. *Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning the*
6 *composition, volume, and management of flowback and produced waters?*
7 b. *Are the major findings concerning flowback and produced water fully supported by the*
8 *information and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential*
9 *impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other major*
10 *findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity*
11 *of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
12 c. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning flowback and produced water*
13 *fully and clearly described?*
14 d. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should*
15 *be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from this*
16 *stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this*
17 *section of the report?*

18 Chapter 7 discusses flowback and produced water, in particular the return of injected fluid and water
19 produced from the formation to the surface and subsequent transport for reuse, treatment, or disposal.
20 The chapter describes the volume of hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water, including a
21 discussion on data sources and formation characteristics. The chapter also discusses the composition of
22 hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water, including temporal changes in flowback
23 composition, total dissolved solids enrichment, radionuclide enrichment, leaching and biotransformation
24 of naturally occurring organic compounds, similarity and variability of produced water from
25 conventional and unconventional formations, general water quality parameters, salinity, organics and
26 metals, naturally occurring radioactive material, and reactions within formations. Chapter 7 also
27 includes a discussion on spatial trends, spill impacts on drinking water resources, produced water
28 management and spill potential, spills of hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water from
29 unconventional oil and gas production, and case studies of potentially impacted sites. In addition, the
30 chapter describes roadway transport of produced water and studies of environmental transport of
31 released produced water, includes a discussion on coalbed methane, describes transport properties, and a
32 chapter synthesis of major findings, factors affecting the frequency or severity of impacts, and
33 uncertainties.

34 **3.5.1. Summary of Available Information on Hydraulic Fracturing Flowback and Produced**
35 **Waters**

- 36 a. *Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning the*
37 *composition, volume, and management of flowback and produced waters?*

38 Overall, Chapter 7 provides a clear and accurate summary of the available information concerning
39 composition, volume, and management of flowback and produced waters. The chapter is generally
40 encyclopedic in providing a summary of the information that is available concerning chemistry and
41 volume of flowback and production waters. Since industry practices and available data are changing
42 rapidly, the EPA should update the chapter with additional information and literature searches, and the
43 SAB identifies several references below for the EPA’s consideration.

1
2 Some SAB recommendations regarding suggested points of emphasis or improvements in clarity of this
3 chapter of the draft Assessment Report are noted below and relate to: 1) the organic content of waste
4 waters, 2) the distinction between flowback and produced waters, 3) the occasional use of tracers by
5 operators, 4) duration of time needed for well completion versus well lifetime, 5) the proportion of wells
6 in conventional versus unconventional formations, 6) the relationship of leaks or spills to the process of
7 hydraulic fracturing itself, 7) the source of salt in waters, 8) best management practices, and 9) issues
8 related to coal bed methane.

9 1) The organic content of waste waters: The water composition data provided in Chapter 7 are limited,
10 reflecting the fact that few compositional analyses of waters have been published, making analysis of the
11 available data more complicated. For example, most of the available data on produced water content
12 were for shale formations and coal bed methane basins, while little data were available for sandstone
13 formations. One observation from the compilation as presented in the report that is notable (and should
14 be addressed) is that the majority of data were for inorganics: only limited data were available for
15 organics (see, however, Section 7.5.7). The report summarizes the organic chemicals reportedly used in
16 hydraulic fracturing fluid. The SAB recommends that the EPA improve this chapter by further
17 discussion of organic compounds in produced water, and the extent to which these organic compounds
18 are derived from the shale itself rather than from injections. Some references are available (e.g.,
19 Leenheer et al., 1982; Hayes, 2009; Llewellyn et al., 2015).

20 2) The distinction between flowback and produced waters: The SAB questions the importance of
21 distinguishing between hydraulic fracturing flowback and hydraulic fracturing produced water, and
22 recommends that the agency reconsider its decision to distinguish between these waters within the draft
23 Assessment Report. Assuming the agency decides to carry forth the distinction between these waters
24 into the final Assessment Report, the SAB recommends that the EPA condense the text describing the
25 differences between flowback and produced waters as the distinction is somewhat arbitrary in the
26 context of unconventional wells. However, the SAB also recommends that the EPA present additional
27 information on changes in water chemistry over time. While this chapter of the draft Assessment Report
28 distinguishes the terms “flowback” and “produced water” to differentiate the terms in relation to overall
29 well flow, the EPA should more clearly acknowledge that such differentiation is difficult or operational
30 at best. This is important in that releases of produced waters are more likely given the life cycle of a
31 well. Moreover, the EPA should note that produced water more closely resembles formation waters, i.e.,
32 produced waters represent pre-existing conditions prior to hydraulic fracturing, whereas in contrast,
33 flowback can include chemicals from injection (production waters generally do not) (Vidic, R.D., et al.,
34 2013; Haluszczak, L.O., et al., 2013; and Balashov, V.N., et al., 2015).

35 3) The occasional use of tracers by operators: In drilling, perforating, completing or remediating a well,
36 operators may sometimes use chemical or radioactive tracers to study their technique (Scott et al., 2010).
37 Indeed, the EPA mentions briefly the use of tracers without much discussion on Page 2-15 (“*Post-*
38 *fracture monitoring of pressure or tracers can also help characterize the results of a fracturing job.*”)
39 These tracers allow an operator to either sense the location and depth of injected fluids or cements using
40 downhole tools (for example with gamma logs for radioactive tracers) or to infer aspects of well
41 completion. With respect to the latter, an operator may infer where fractures have opened during
42 perforation stages by monitoring the return of these tracers to the surface. Within Chapter 7 of the draft
43 Assessment Report, the EPA has comprehensively summarized the available public database of
44 compounds or metals used for hydraulic fracturing but has not summarized and should summarize what

1 compounds or metals are used for these chemical and radioactive tracers. Since some of these
2 compounds or metals may return to the surface during flowback or during cement squeezes, it is
3 important that the agency summarize what tracers are used, how much and where tracers are used, what
4 concentrations are in use, and what concentrations are measured for these tracers in the flowback or
5 produced waters, or are in use during a cement squeeze. This is especially important for radioactive
6 tracers, given the interest on the part of the public with respect to the topic of radioactivity in
7 development of unconventional formations. Radioactive tracers that have been reported include
8 antimony, iridium, and scandium (daughters include tellurium and platinum). The agency should also
9 clarify that there are two types of tracers in use: elements naturally present in the formation or brine that
10 can be measured in flowback or produced waters as a putative “fingerprint” of the formational waters,
11 and elements or compounds injected into the fracturing fluids intentionally to allow analysis of well
12 completion or cement squeeze processes. In this paragraph, the SAB is referring to the latter. Also, the
13 SAB recommends that the EPA significantly expand and clarify the discussion provided in Chapter 7 on
14 the use by industry of tracers for injection fluids, as well as the efforts made by the EPA to develop
15 tracers, and describe how tracers might be an approach that could allow interpretation of the source of
16 contamination if it occurs.

17
18 4) Duration of time needed for well completion versus well lifetime: The SAB recommends that the
19 EPA include more information in Chapter 7 on the length of time it takes to hydraulically fracture a well
20 and the duration of time over which the flowback is likely to return to the surface. The SAB notes that
21 this is a pertinent aspect of the distinction between flowback water and production water because the
22 chemistry of the fluid changes in this time interval. The draft Assessment Report accurately states that
23 hydraulic fracturing of a well takes only a few days, while a well may produce for decades; however,
24 throughout the chapter the EPA continues to refer to hydraulic fracturing and lifecycle, and this might
25 imply to a casual reader that the completion process continues through the lifetime of the well. This lack
26 of clarity within the draft Assessment Report about the duration of time for well completion could
27 confuse external stakeholders, and should be rewritten.

28
29 5) The proportion of wells in conventional versus unconventional formations: Another important aspect
30 which the draft Assessment Report does not make clear is the comparison of conventional to
31 unconventional wells with respect to water production. Some information is summarized in one
32 paragraph (Section 7.5.1). In relation to the number of hydraulic fracturing wells drilled in the U.S., the
33 SAB recommends that the EPA describe the percentage of hydraulic fracturing wells installed in
34 unconventional as compared to conventional formations. While unconventional wells have been the
35 focus of the public and the media, the EPA should also describe how much hydraulic fracturing is
36 occurring in conventional versus unconventional wells, and how much wastewater is produced for each
37 type of hydraulic fracturing well when considered across the entire U.S. This information is important to
38 describe, since some reports note that “up to 95 percent of new wells drilled today are hydraulically
39 fractured”².

40
41 6) The relationship of leaks or spills to the process of hydraulic fracturing itself: Chapter 7 discusses
42 surface releases during hydraulic fracturing as a potential area of interest with respect to drinking water
43 resource impacts. The draft Assessment Report should clarify whether fluid leaks through surface pipes
44 have any unique association with, or can be caused by, hydraulic fracturing. Surface releases are most
45 likely to occur during the production phase of a well, as opposed to the hydraulic fracturing process.

² See the U.S. Department of Energy’s Office of Fossil Energy publication on this topic at <http://energy.gov/fe/shale-gas-101>

1 After production commences, hydrocarbons and water are separated, and the produced brine may be
2 pumped to a salt water disposal well (Class II injection well). While all surface lines are subject to leaks,
3 the EPA should discuss whether and how hydraulic fracturing impacts the frequency or severity of these
4 surface line leaks. The draft Assessment Report mentions several times in Chapter 4 that pressure
5 cycling of wells can impact cement seals, and the EPA should discuss whether or not these effects on
6 cement seals result in impacts to hydraulic fracturing wastewaters or change the likelihood of leaks as
7 discussed in this chapter. Also, since it has been reported that the volume of water produced per unit of
8 gas is less in an unconventional as compared to a conventional well (Vidic et al., 2013), the EPA should
9 discuss whether impacts to drinking water resources are fewer for unconventional as compared to
10 conventional hydraulic fracturing wells. In addition, since line age and corrosion are factors in
11 developing leaks, the EPA should describe whether leakage rates are smaller for unconventional wells
12 because the hydraulic fracturing facilities are generally newer.

13
14 7) The source of salt in waters: The draft Assessment Report emphasizes (from Blauch et al., 2009) that
15 brine salts in produced waters derive from dissolution of halite and other evaporite salts in the target
16 shale. The SAB suggests that the EPA rewrite this discussion, since this emphasis does not generally
17 describe/explain the general presence of salts in produced waters (since salt is not found in all or most
18 shales). The SAB notes that while some places may have subsurface halite that interacts with fluids,
19 salts are largely derived from brines in the target formation itself or surrounding formations (and
20 evaporites may be present in the basin but not necessarily in the target formation itself). In addition, on
21 lines 25 and 26 of Page 7-16 the EPA does not comprehensively list causes of increasing solutes because
22 the increase in salt content of production waters with time could be attributed to transport of brine from
23 small pores in the shale into the fractures. Alternately, the increase could be related to the increasing
24 percentage of formation waters returning through the production of the well after the hydraulic
25 fracturing process is completed. A paper describing a mass balance calculation on the brine salt for wells
26 in Marcellus showed a proof of concept for how the salt enters the return water and why it changes with
27 time (Balashov et al., 2015). The EPA could cite the Balashov, et al. (2015) paper in the discussion
28 provided on page 7-7, Section 7.3, and on Page 7-26, Section 7.4.1, lines 3-16 of draft Assessment
29 Report.

30
31 8) Best management practices: Chapter 7 provides a broad, albeit somewhat dated, overview, but should
32 provide more details that would provide a reader enough information to understand best management
33 practices used by industry associated with the flowback and produced water stage of the HFWC. These
34 best management practices include regulatory requirements around secondary containment, reporting,
35 and remediation activities associated with hydraulic fracturing spills. The SAB finds that if the draft
36 Assessment Report provided more clarity regarding regulatory and industry response to spills, the
37 general public would be better educated on the overall approach of the industry and its regulators
38 towards these spills.

39
40 9) Issues related to coal bed methane. On Page 7.1.2, Produced Water, Page 7-13, Lines 12-16 of the
41 draft Assessment Report, the EPA should note that coal bed methane (CBM) wells produce more water
42 than hydraulic fracturing wells because saturated coals are the target formations for CBM wells. The
43 EPA should also note that since it is the head pressure of the water causing the coals to retain the gas,
44 once the water head pressure is lifted, the coals de-gas (i.e., water is removed from the coal bed to
45 release the gas). The EPA should also note that in contrast, shale and tight gas formations are better
46 producers of oil and gas when these formations are found in areas with lower water saturation values,
47 because the water can impede the flow in those formations. The SAB recommends that the EPA include

1 these distinctions within the draft Assessment Report since such distinctions impact the quantity and
2 quality of hydraulic fracturing waters that are produced during hydraulic fracturing operations.

3 **3.5.2. Major Findings**

4 *b1. Are the major findings concerning flowback and produced water fully supported by the information*
5 *and data presented in the assessment?*

6 While the major findings, found in Section 10.1.4, are generally supported by the information and data
7 presented in the assessment, the major findings should have been more explicitly quantified and clearly
8 identified within the chapter itself. The SAB notes that while it is difficult to find where major findings
9 are summarized in this chapter, the SAB assumes that the major findings are listed in Section 10.1.4 and
10 Text Box 7-1.

11
12 An example of a finding that is described but not adequately highlighted in the draft Assessment Report
13 is the following: *spills of wastewaters from oil and gas development have happened and have affected*
14 *drinking water resources*. While the SAB concurs with this statement, the EPA should place this
15 statement in context by also describing whether such spills result in a temporary or permanent impact.
16 As mentioned elsewhere within the draft Assessment Report, the EPA should support this statement
17 with statistical data as much as possible.

18
19 As discussed in the SAB response to Charge Question 5a, Chapter 7 of the draft Assessment Report is
20 generally well written and clear. It has the tone of an impartial review and is very encyclopedic,
21 especially up to Section 7.7 and page 7-30. In this regard, the chapter does a very good job answering
22 the question, “What is the composition of hydraulic fracturing flowback and produced water, and what
23 factors might influence this composition?” The SAB notes, however, that only the last 16 pages of the
24 chapter are devoted to analysis and discussion of impacts, modes of impacts, and analysis of related
25 data, and the SAB finds that these data are presented in encyclopedia format without interpretation and
26 analysis. In this regard, the SAB finds that the EPA did not adequately synthesize the implications of the
27 data in order to emphasize what is important in summarizing the findings to answer the question, “Are
28 the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully
29 supported?” The SAB also finds that the EPA presents a significant amount of information in Chapter 7
30 but provides very limited analysis of this information.

31 *b2. Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage*
32 *of the HFWC?*

33 Chapter 7 identifies the potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC but
34 does not emphasize certain aspects of the system sufficiently.

35
36 While the draft Assessment Report provides an overview of fate and transport of spilled liquids and the
37 various components necessary to evaluate migration of a spill (i.e., amount of material released, timing
38 of the release, response efforts, timing of response measures, soils, geology, and receptors), it
39 emphasizes the horizontal and vertical distance between spill and receptor without adequately indicating
40 that certain subsurface geologic conditions and hydraulic gradient scenarios in the shallow subsurface
41 can allow fluids to migrate a considerable distance from the point of release. For example, page 7-48
42 notes that: “...impacts to drinking water systems depend on proximity.” In fact, researchers have

1 identified some cases where compounds (both tracers intentionally spilled on the land surface for
2 research (Brantley et al., 2014) and contaminants unintentionally spilled on the land surface or leaked
3 from a borehole (Sloto et al., 2013; Llewellyn et al., 2015) entered fractures and moved several
4 kilometers into aquifers. While such long-distance travel incidents have only been rarely reported (Vidic
5 et al., 2013; Llewellyn et al., 2015), the draft Assessment Report should describe the frequency and
6 severity of such events and recognize that such events occur.

7
8 Also, the draft Assessment Report does not provide sufficient emphasis on the importance of fractures,
9 bedding planes, and faults in the subsurface. For example, heterogeneities should be discussed on lines
10 30-32 on page 7-42 of the draft Assessment Report, and the chapter should note that if hydraulic
11 fracturing fluids spill into a fractured reservoir, the constituents associated with the release could
12 migrate long distances. Likewise, the draft Assessment Report should note that if a hydraulic fracturing
13 spill were to enter unconsolidated sediments, migration of the chemicals associated with this spill could
14 be observed over a considerable distance. While the draft Assessment Report appropriately emphasizes
15 large volume spills of long duration, the importance of small volume spills in specific types of areas
16 (e.g. ridgetops with joints that interconnect in subsurface) should also be discussed because hydraulic
17 fracturing constituents could travel into drinking water resources (Llewellyn et al., 2015). Thus, the draft
18 Assessment Report should clarify that long-distance travel of hydraulic fracturing constituents is
19 possible, has been reported in the published literature though rarely, and can usually be prevented with
20 adequate management practices.

21
22 The SAB also finds that portions of the modeling summary provided in this chapter is misleading as the
23 modelled subsurface did not include heterogeneities. The SAB concludes this portion of the modeling is
24 unrealistic because preferential flow paths in the subsurface are generally important in relation to
25 contaminant mobility. Likewise, other modelling cited in the draft Assessment Report (Myers, 2012) is
26 also misleading as it over-emphasizes highly permeable subsurface heterogeneities. Heterogeneities
27 such as fractures, faults, and bedding planes should be explained and emphasized in the draft
28 Assessment Report, and the two modelling examples provided in this chapter of the draft Assessment
29 Report should be counterposed and explained as endmembers in this regard. For example, the EPA
30 could directly compare the two modelling examples and explain why one study concluded that
31 contamination could occur within a very short time period while the other concluded such contamination
32 was unlikely. In essence, these contradictory conclusions are related to assumptions underlying the two
33 models: the EPA should clarify these assumptions and comment upon the state of knowledge underlying
34 such assumptions.

35 As mentioned in the response to Charge Question 5a, during drilling, perforating, completing or
36 remediating a hydraulic fracturing well, operators may sometimes inject chemical or radioactive tracers
37 to study their technique (Scott et al., 2010). Indeed, the EPA mentions briefly the use of tracers without
38 much discussion on Page 2-15 of the draft Assessment Report, noting that “*Post-fracture monitoring of*
39 *pressure or tracers can also help characterize the results of a fracturing job.*” The SAB recommends
40 that the EPA address questions related to the use of injected tracers in Chapter 7, particularly since the
41 public has expressed great interest in the topic of radioactivity in the waters associated with oil/gas
42 development. For example, the EPA should assess and discuss whether there have been any reports of
43 spilled liquids or leaks of radioactive tracers associated with hydraulic fracturing operations.

1 *b3. Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward?*

2 Chapter 7 did not bring forward all the major findings associated with the flowback and produced water
3 phase of the HFWC. The EPA should include an additional major finding that: (a) large severe hydraulic
4 fracturing flowback and produced water-related incidents such as blowouts, and smaller common
5 incidents (usually containment leaks), may cause effects on drinking water resources on a volume basis;
6 and (b) blowouts are more severe in terms of impact due to the high-volume, short-duration
7 characteristics of the release. This over-arching observation would be useful to external stakeholders and
8 the general public, and it is important to state this as a major finding since most of the chapter reads like
9 an encyclopedia. In this regard, the EPA should also discuss specific areas of this phase of the HFWC
10 that need improvement and that could help to reduce the number of actual spills, leaks, and releases
11 associated with hydraulic fracturing. For example, the SAB recommends that the EPA consider
12 including discussion on whether hydraulic fracturing leaks or impacts could be diminished in number or
13 severity through closer regulation of the construction practices for hydraulic fracturing-related
14 containment areas that are described on Page 7-35, line 29 of the draft Assessment Report, through
15 increased monitoring of hydraulic fracturing activities, or through additional or new hydraulic fracturing
16 technologies designed to reduce or avoid blowouts.

17 Another major finding that Chapter 7 does not sufficiently emphasize relates to how assessments are
18 conducted after releases of chemicals from hydraulic fracturing operations occur to the environment.
19 The EPA should provide additional context in this chapter of the draft Assessment Report concerning
20 how these assessments are conducted, what information is collected, how that information is provided to
21 external stakeholders, and what improvements could be offered in this process.

22
23 The EPA summarizes a number of steps that are needed to study a suspected impact on pages 7-35 and
24 7-36 of the draft Assessment Report. This discussion clearly describes how difficult it is to assess and
25 determine causation of impacts when a hydraulic fracturing incident occurs related to contamination of
26 groundwater, especially for subsurface leaks, mostly because the requisite data can be hard to gather for
27 such attribution. Furthermore, impacts in the subsurface can be very hard to remediate. To help assess
28 these issues, the SAB recommends that the EPA add a discussion on the implications for the use of
29 tracers during drilling or hydraulic fracturing, and also on implications for the use of nonbiodegradable
30 compounds associated with hydraulic fracturing operations.

31
32 Overall, while the draft Assessment Report emphasizes differences in hydraulic fracturing flowback and
33 produced waters from site to site, the EPA should assess and discuss generalizations of commonalities
34 among such waters in the draft Assessment Report. The EPA should summarize what chemistry is
35 generally and most commonly observed in hydraulic fracturing waters, for both organic and inorganic
36 compounds. Such a “generalized water chemistry” would assist in efforts to evaluate potential health
37 risks associated with such waters.

38

1 **3.5.3. Frequency or Severity of Impacts**

2 *b4. Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and*
3 *fully supported?*

4
5 While Chapter 7 of the draft Assessment Report provides support for observations made regarding
6 impacts that are described, the chapter does not describe the factors affecting frequency or severity of
7 impacts to the extent possible, as described further below.

8
9 Chapter 7 summarizes many types of incidents and refers to case studies that describe leaks and spills,
10 but the draft Assessment Report could be improved by providing additional detail describing the extent
11 and duration of the impacts, including:

- 12 • The level of impact for spills and releases when they happen.
13 • Whether the waterway was severely impacted after a hydraulic fracturing spill or leak.
14 • The length of time the impact affected a surface or groundwater system.
15 • The spill types or volumes that are most deleterious to waterways or groundwaters.
16 • Outcomes: Are most or all spills cleaned up quickly with little impact?
17 • Whether even the larger spills had significant, long-term impact.
18 • Whether many or most hydraulic fracturing spills are contained within standard secondary
19 containment barriers.

20 Without such information, the reader is left to assume that all spills are impacting soil/groundwater/
21 surface water. As one example, the chapter's discussion of the Penn Township, Lycoming County, PA
22 incident on page 7-37 of the draft Assessment Report confirms that the impact was temporary, noting:
23 *"By January 2011, stream chloride concentrations had dropped below the limit established by*
24 *Pennsylvania's surface water quality standards."* The EPA should describe whether any long-term
25 impacts were observed regarding this incident. Further, within the EPA discussion on the Leroy
26 Township, Bradford County, PA event in the draft Assessment Report, while the EPA described that
27 localized surface water impacts were reported, the EPA should discuss whether long-term effects were
28 reported for the potable water wells.

29 Within the draft Assessment Report, the EPA should generally describe the timeframes needed to
30 remediate surface or groundwater to pre-existing conditions. This general description and information is
31 important to include within the draft Assessment Report since spills into aquifers are harder to remediate
32 than spills into surface water. As written, the draft Assessment Report leads a reader to believe spills and
33 leaks create permanent impacts.

34 To understand the likely probability of releases to surface water or groundwater from hydraulic
35 fracturing activities, the draft Assessment Report should quantify in text and in a figure the frequency of
36 the different types of release events, including whether the spilled hydraulic fracturing material impacts
37 groundwater or surface water. While the EPA collected a large amount of information about hydraulic
38 fracturing wastewaters, it should evaluate the data and make tables and figures that concisely summarize
39 the collected data. The EPA should conduct a statistical analysis on this data, perhaps using statistical
40 tools of analysis for sparse datasets. For example, while Chapter 7 provides a good identification and
41 description of the sources for flowback and produced water spills, leaks, and releases, it would be very
42 helpful if the EPA clarified the text by summing up these types of release events from each section
43 together through the use of statistics. In addition, while the draft Assessment Report provides a number

1 of local statistics from specific studies, these statistics should be summarized in the conclusion Section
2 7.8.4. For example, the EPA should specifically note the following within Chapter 7: X number of wells
3 were drilled in the US, Y number of these wells were hydraulically fractured, and Z number of spilled
4 liquids occurred. In addition, while Chapter 7 refers back to Chapter 5 (Text box 5-14) for spill rate data
5 and this is described in text on page 7-33, lines 10 through 21, the chapter should include further
6 summary evaluation of these data. The data should be shown in easily interpreted figures – perhaps
7 histograms - to illustrate the size of leaks as well as frequency. Furthermore, in order to better
8 understand the significance of releases from hydraulic fracturing wells, the EPA should assess the
9 statistical difference between the number of releases for wells completed with hydraulic fracturing
10 versus those that were not completed with hydraulic fracturing for a specific time period or region.
11 Furthermore, the EPA should discuss the important finding that half of the 457 reported spills were for
12 1000 gallons or less of spilled fluids; this finding should also be described through an illustration in
13 addition to text. The EPA should summarize the number of spilled liquids in absolute numbers and also
14 in context relative to the number of wells drilled, truck trips, and pipelines miles.

15 The EPA should also develop figures or tables that summarize the temporal and spatial scaling
16 associated with statistics of spilled liquids/leaks/contamination events. For example, the draft
17 Assessment Report notes that the truck accident rate is low and the likelihood of spilled liquids related
18 to trucks is low, but does not note that truck spills could have important impacts in a small local area.
19 The draft Assessment Report should recognize the potential for significant local effects and consider this
20 spatial scaling issue throughout the report when it discusses conclusions associated with hydraulic
21 fracturing spills, leaks, and contamination events. It is important for the public to understand why
22 personal experience may differ from broad average observations, and that while not all oil/gas
23 development sites are problematic, some oil/gas development sites have been problematic in the past.
24 For these reasons, the EPA should clarify the spatial and temporal aspects of these hydraulic fracturing
25 spills, leaks, and contamination events. The SAB also notes that clarification of the subtleties of this
26 spatial and temporal scaling would help industry and the public better understand the relative frequency
27 and significance of hydraulic fracturing-related problems in a given area.

28
29 Chapter 7 of the draft Assessment Report makes several statements that are so general that the
30 statements have little meaning. For example, page 7-46 of the draft Assessment Report notes that:
31 *“Conclusive determination of impacts to water resources depends on commitment of resources to the*
32 *implementation of sampling analysis and evaluation strategies.”* It would be more useful if the EPA
33 synthesized the available information and described specifically what evaluation strategies and sampling
34 analysis is needed to provide a conclusive determination of impacts. The EPA should note, for example,
35 whether baseline data are needed to understand the impacts associated with spilled material.

36 **3.5.4. Uncertainties, Assumptions and Limitations**

37 *c. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning flowback and produced water fully and*
38 *clearly described?*

39 While the EPA acknowledges uncertainties in the information presented in Chapter 7, the EPA should
40 examine these uncertainties in more depth. The uncertainties described by the EPA in this chapter
41 provide sufficient detail to provide approximate, general indications of some risks associated with the
42 flowback and produced water phase of the HFWC. However, the EPA should provide more information
43 on uncertainties associated with calculating risks from contaminants in hydraulic fracturing waters (e.g.,

1 uncertainties associated with organic contaminants such as benzene commonly present in produced
2 waters).

3
4 In addition to deeper examination of uncertainties, the EPA should summarize approaches that could be
5 used to reduce these uncertainties and help protect drinking water resources. The EPA should provide a
6 section outlining the additional information that is needed to more completely understand the risks and
7 approaches that can be taken to control these risks associated with exposure to hydraulic fracturing
8 waters.

9 Chapter 7 identifies data gaps, especially with respect to baseline conditions and with respect to
10 individual incidents. However, the chapter should clarify if the gaps are present because the data are
11 non-existent or not easily (i.e., electronically) available. The draft Assessment Report should clarify if
12 needed data are available but not online publicly, or are not in a format that is easily scrutinized. For
13 example, the EPA should discuss whether the research team found electronically available data that
14 might be useful for analysis of water quality impacts, and whether the EPA was unable to provide
15 resources to collect these data into a database format. The EPA should more explicitly describe issues
16 surrounding the availability or lack of availability of data, including reasons for any lack of data
17 availability. This chapter should also describe what improvements have been or are being made by
18 regulatory agencies to improve database systems which provide more information on operational
19 activities associated with the oil and gas industry, and recognize that states have made considerable
20 advancements in electronic database systems that allow for increased reviews and assessments by
21 external stakeholders.

22 **3.5.5. Additional Information, Background or Context to be Added**

23 *d1. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should be*
24 *assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from this stage of the*
25 *HFWC?*

26 As described further below, the EPA should provide more information in Chapter 7 on radionuclides in
27 wastes (including the new Pennsylvania Department of Environmental Protection research), bromide
28 concentrations in wastes and in surface waters, best management practices (BMPs) for surface
29 impoundments, and the natural occurrence of brines in the subsurface.

30
31 Within the draft Assessment Report, the EPA should increase the emphasis and better explain the
32 radioactive nature of some geomechanics produced during hydraulic fracturing operations. Many public
33 comments on the draft Assessment Report raised these concerns, and the EPA should expand the
34 discussion of the importance or possible impacts related to radioactivity within this chapter. While most
35 of the radioactivity derives from the geologic formation itself, radioactive tracers are sometimes
36 injected. As mentioned specifically in the response to Charge Question 5a, the draft Assessment Report
37 should specifically and carefully address the use of radioactive tracers during well completion or
38 remediation. The EPA should also assess radioactivity in shale cuttings as part of the assessment of
39 potential impacts within the draft Assessment Report, even though such cuttings are related only to
40 hydraulic fracturing drilling.

41
42 Chapter 7 and Appendix E of the draft Assessment Report should amplify discussion on the significant
43 releases of bromides from hydraulic fracturing operations to surface or groundwaters. These releases

1 subsequently become part of intake water at downstream drinking water treatment plants and upon
2 disinfection can result in concentrations of brominated organic compounds that are deleterious to human
3 health (Wilson and VanBriesen, 2012). The draft Assessment Report should discuss the importance of
4 bromide for drinking water, and how the addition of oxidants or disinfectants (chlorine, ozone) to
5 drinking water at drinking water treatment plants forms brominated disinfection by-products (DBP)
6 [e.g., brominated trihalomethane (THM), haloacetic acid (HAA), bromate] which has been raised as a
7 health concern. The ratio of Cl/Br in Table E-4 of the draft Assessment Report is approximately 200/1,
8 which is a lower ratio than seawater (~300/1) and lower than the ~300/1 ratio observed in drinking
9 waters (Amy et al., 1994). The EPA should assess and clarify in the draft Assessment Report whether
10 high Br is found in all oil/gas wastewaters or whether it is characteristic of only a few formations.
11 Furthermore, the EPA should note that the Br generally comes from the rock into which hydraulic
12 fracturing wells are drilled, and discuss whether bromide is ever added as an injection compound. The
13 draft Assessment Report should also more consistently use either the term “bromine” or “bromide.”
14

15 The draft Assessment Report should also assess iodide in the same manner as bromides as recommended
16 in the above paragraph, even though the draft Assessment Report provides very little data on the
17 presence of iodide in flowback or produced waters. Since iodide also reacts with some oxidants to
18 produce DBPs at downstream drinking water plants, and recent evidence shows that brominated and
19 iodinated DBPs are more cyto- and geno-toxic than the chlorinated analogs (Plewa, M.J., and Wagner,
20 E.D., 2009; and Richardson, S.D., et al., 2014), information about iodide in wastewaters should be
21 amplified in draft Assessment Report. The ratio of Cl/I in table E-4 is around 5000/1 which is much
22 lower (i.e., more iodide) than the ratio in seawater which is 35,000/1. The EPA should discuss why
23 iodide is more concentrated in flowback and produced water relative to Cl than seawater. In addition, the
24 draft Assessment Report does not provide data on bromate, chlorate/chlorite, perchlorate or iodate. All
25 of these chemicals have human toxicity endpoints and some have MCLs, and the EPA should describe
26 in the draft Assessment Report whether these compounds are ever found in hydraulic fracturing waters.
27 The SAB finds that the EPA’s discussion on halogens in the report, which is mostly limited to chloride,
28 to be inadequate.
29

30 Chapter 7 should also increase the emphasis and better explain the use of impoundments for hydraulic
31 fracturing flowback and production waters. The chapter states that, “*The causes of these spills were*
32 *human error (38%), equipment failure (17%), failures of container integrity (13%), miscellaneous*
33 *causes (e.g., well communication, well blowout), and unknown causes. Most of the volume spilled*
34 *(74%), however, came from spills caused by a failure of container integrity.” While an impoundment*
35 *example is given on page 7-42 and impoundments are mentioned in the draft Assessment Report,*
36 *impoundments are not emphasized sufficiently. The EPA should describe best practices regarding the*
37 *use of impoundments and how are they constructed. Since the EPA notes that container leakage is the*
38 *single biggest source of leakage on an event basis, the nature and use of hydraulic fracturing*
39 *impoundments are particularly important to fully describe in the draft Assessment Report. The EPA*
40 *should discuss available data concerning impoundment leakage and location, and describe whether leaks*
41 *from impoundments occur more frequently if such impoundments are placed in different geographic*
42 *locations such as in floodplains or along ridgelines. The SAB notes that in some parts of the country*
43 *(Pennsylvania), impoundments are being used less frequently, and the EPA should summarize any such*
44 *changes in best management practice and the reasons for these changes. Furthermore, page 7-44 of the*
45 *draft Assessment Report points to USGS studies, but should discuss and cite these studies in Section*
46 *7.7.2.3 of the draft Assessment Report. In addition, the EPA should discuss the cause of the structural*
47 *lack of integrity responsible for leaks from impoundments, and whether leaks from impoundments are*

1 induced by operational conditions, poor manufacturing of the container, corrosion caused by the
2 flowback or produced water chemistry, or by seismic activity. The EPA should also summarize in the
3 draft Assessment Report which states have laws or regulations requiring lined pits and berms to manage
4 potential spills, leaks and runoff from hydraulic fracturing waters, and include a list of best practices
5 currently in use in industry (such as the elimination of pits, and use of tanks stored over lined berm-
6 surrounded catchment areas).

7
8 The draft Assessment Report should increase the emphasis and better explain the presence of natural
9 brines in the subsurface as encountered during or in the vicinity of hydraulic fracturing operations. Brine
10 salts have been identified in an incident with respect to drinking water (Boyer et al., 2012), but available
11 literature do not describe where these salts came from. The brines may have originated as near-surface
12 brines rather than from hydraulic fracturing wastewater spills or leaks; the chapter should address this
13 type of potential source. The EPA should also explain in the chapter that there can be natural pathways
14 of brines to the surface, that these natural pathways are not necessarily related to shale gas development,
15 and that brine salts can contaminate aquifers and surface waters naturally. The SAB notes that this
16 complicates the EPA's interpretation of spilled liquids and leaks of flowback and production waters
17 because the background conditions can be marked by the same salts that influence the composition of
18 flowback and produced waters. The SAB notes that the presence of natural brines from depth that move
19 to the surface or to shallow groundwater is especially important since there is significant public concern
20 regarding the transport of hydraulic fracturing fluid from the deep subsurface of unconventional gas
21 reservoirs to groundwater or surface water. While the potential and rate of such transport may be very
22 low in the context of shale gas development, the SAB recommends that the EPA discuss this pathway
23 and mechanism of brine movement in this chapter in the context of natural brines. The EPA should also
24 discuss whether the presence of shallow brines implies transport upward from depth or not, and if yes,
25 what implications, if any, does this transport have for injected fluids during hydraulic fracturing.

26
27 The EPA should include additional discussion within Chapter 7 on the importance of gathering pre-
28 existing baseline chemistry of surface and groundwater in order to better understand the impacts of
29 spilled liquids and leaks. In this discussion it would be helpful for the EPA to describe how to ascertain
30 background condition of a waterway or aquifer, define what "background" is, and describe situations
31 where background conditions of waters may be an important factor in considering potential impacts. The
32 chapter's discussion on pre-existing conditions in groundwater and surface waters is only provided in
33 one paragraph on page 7-35. The EPA's discussion on background conditions should include the
34 importance of gathering pre-existing methane concentrations or other constituents in numerous potable
35 wells from non-target geologic zones, in order to help in assessing whether any constituent detected in
36 groundwater near oil and gas operations is originating from those operations. In addition, the EPA
37 should include maximum contaminant limits if available for chemicals listed in Table 7-4.

38 As described in the EPA's research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011), the EPA had planned to evaluate the
39 potential use of tracer compounds that could be used in hydraulic fracturing injectate to fingerprint fluid
40 provenance. While the draft Assessment Report includes little on this topic, the EPA should provide
41 some discussion of it and clarify that there are two types of tracers in use: elements naturally present in
42 the formation or brine that can be measured in flowback or produced waters as a putative "fingerprint"
43 of the formational waters, and elements or compounds injected into the fracturing fluids intentionally to
44 allow analysis of well completion or cement squeeze processes. The EPA discusses elements naturally
45 present in the formation or brine in the chapter, but the EPA does not sufficiently discuss elements or
46 compounds injected into the fracturing fluids intentionally in the chapter. The EPA should explicitly

1 describe in the chapter whether it recommends the use of fingerprint compounds in injected fluids, and
2 what additional information is needed to evaluate whether to use these compounds for this purpose.
3 Some authors have argued that organic compounds have moved kilometers from drilled wells
4 (Llewellyn et al., 2015), and the EPA should assess whether the use of fingerprint compounds could
5 elucidate such mobility, if the fingerprint compounds had been injected originally into the well.
6

7 Within the EPA's Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011), the EPA described several activities where it planned to
8 inject tracer or fingerprint analyses:

9 i) page 39: *“Prospective case studies. The prospective case studies will give the EPA a better
10 understanding of the processes and tools used to determine the location of local geologic and/or
11 man-made features prior to hydraulic fracturing. The EPA will also evaluate the impacts of local
12 geologic and/or man-made features on the fate and transport of chemical contaminants to
13 drinking water resources by measuring water quality before, during, and after injection. The
14 EPA is exploring the possibility of using chemical tracers to track the fate and transport of
15 injected fracturing fluids. The tracers may be used to determine if fracturing fluid migrates from
16 the targeted formation to an aquifer via existing natural or man-made pathways.”*
17

18 ii) page 113: *“As part of these efforts, the EPA and DOE are working together on a prospective
19 case study located in the Marcellus Shale region that leverages DOE’s capabilities in field-
20 based monitoring of environmental signals. DOE is conducting soil gas surveys, hydraulic
21 fracturing tracer studies, and electromagnetic induction surveys to identify possible migration of
22 natural gas, completion fluids, or production fluids.”*
23

24 Although the prospective case studies were not initiated, the EPA should nonetheless explicitly assess
25 and describe the potential for development of tracer metals or compounds that could be injected along
26 with hydraulic fracturing fluids, drilling fluids, or cement squeezes that could help in forensic analysis
27 of incidents related to those injections.

28 The SAB recommends that the EPA should analyze flowback water for organic compounds. The EPA
29 should also assess whether the costs/benefits for conducting such an intense effort, and whether such an
30 effort would advance the assessment of potential impacts on drinking water. Chapter 7 should clarify the
31 importance of data gaps associated with analyzing organics in public drinking water supplies, describe
32 the difficulties in conducting such analysis, and note that such analysis may not be the most effective
33 way to identify hydraulic fracturing-related spills. Furthermore, the discussion in Section 7.4.5 on
34 analysis of constituents in water should cite new techniques of analysis that measure broad categories of
35 compounds rather than individual compounds (Llewellyn et al. 2015). Llewellyn et al. argue that a better
36 approach for determining contaminants may be to look for suites of organic compounds that provide
37 fingerprints as patterns, rather than to search for individual compounds which may be too difficult.
38 Llewellyn et al. could also be cited on p 7-45. The SAB also agrees that many compounds in produced
39 waters are often categorized as BTEX compounds, and that these compounds are frequently found in
40 hydraulic fracturing wastewaters because the compounds come out of the shales themselves. The chapter
41 should note that while petroleum (oil/condensate) contains many hundreds of individual compounds that
42 could be included in the dissolved phase as trace components, the presence of these compounds are
43 generally classified as BTEX and total petroleum hydrocarbons.
44

45 Chapter 7 of the draft Assessment Report does not adequately discuss or assess microbial processes
46 associated with hydraulic fracturing operations and the related potential impacts to drinking water

1 resources. The fate and transport of hydraulic fracturing constituents are often very dependent on
2 microbial reactions, especially for organic compounds. The SAB recommends that the EPA further
3 describe microbial processes within the discussion on adsorption, absorption, and precipitation on line
4 26 of page 7-42 of the draft Assessment Report. The EPA used the EPI Suite model to estimate various
5 properties of hydraulic fracturing chemicals. EPI Suite is a group of models that employ some
6 parameters that are uncertain and require detailed sensitivity analysis to assess whether the model
7 provides meaningful results. The EPA should also include information on chemical mechanisms or
8 factors that EPI Suite does not consider when estimating various properties of hydraulic fracturing
9 chemicals. While the draft Assessment Report notes on page 7-43 that high salinity is not adequately
10 incorporated into those EPI Suite estimations, the chapter should describe whether and how other
11 potentially important factors such as microbiological reactions are assessed. The EPA's approach to
12 determine mobility of certain hydraulic fracturing chemicals is based on very limited data, and the
13 chapter should describe how subsurface biogeochemical reactions may change the properties of
14 hydraulic fracturing chemicals and make them more or less mobile than their original state. Given the
15 large uncertainties associated with unknown hydraulic fracturing constituents and unknown subsurface
16 reactions that may change the mobility of hydraulic fracturing chemicals, the EPA should further
17 describe the usefulness of using EPI Suite analysis when assessing potential impacts of hydraulic
18 fracturing chemicals on drinking water resources.

19
20 Also, the EPA should include additional analysis and discussion on how recycled hydraulic fracturing
21 produced water that is reused onsite at hydraulic fracturing facilities without treatment might affect the
22 severity or frequency of potential contamination of surrounding drinking water resources.

23
24 *d2. Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?*

25
26 The SAB recommends that the EPA consider the following additional literature sources within this
27 chapter of the draft Assessment Report:

28
29 Amy, G., M. Siddiqui, W. Zhai, J. DeBroux, and W. Odem. 1994. American Water Works Association
30 Research Foundation (AwwaRF) Final Report - Survey on bromide in drinking water and impacts on
31 DBP formation. American Water Works Association Research Foundation.

32
33 Balashov, V.N., T. Engelder, X. Gu, M.S. Fantle, and S.L. Brantley. 2015. A model describing flowback
34 chemistry changes with time after Marcellus Shale hydraulic fracturing. *American Association of*
35 *Petroleum Geologists Bulletin* 99(1), 143-154. January 2015. doi: 110.1306/06041413119.

36
37 Boyer, E.W., B.R. Swistock, J. Clark, M. Madden, and D.E. Rizzo. 2012. The impact of Marcellus Gas
38 Drilling on Rural Drinking Water Supplies. *The Center for Rural Pennsylvania, Pennsylvania General*
39 *Assembly*,
40 http://www.rural.palegislature.us/documents/reports/Marcellus_and_drinking_water_2012.pdf, accessed
41 October 2014, Harrisburg, PA.

42
43 Brantley, S.L., D. Yoxtheimer, S. Arjmand, P. Grieve, R. Vidic, J. Pollak, G.T. Llewellyn, J. Abad, and
44 C. Simon. 2014. Water resource impacts during unconventional shale gas development: The
45 Pennsylvania experience. *International Journal of Coal Geology* 126, p. 140-156. June 1, 2014.
46 dx.doi.org/110.1016/j.coal.2013.1012.1017
47

- 1 Drollette, B.D., K. Hoelzer, N.R. Warner, T.H. Darrah, O. Karatum, M.P. O'Connor, R.K. Nelson, L.A.
2 Fernandez, C.M. Reddy, A. Vengosh, R.B. Jackson, M. Elsner, and D.L. Plata. 2015. Elevated levels of
3 diesel range organic compounds in groundwater near Marcellus gas operations are derived from surface
4 activities. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 112(43), p. 13184-13189. October 27, 2015.
5 doi/10.1073/pnas.1511474112.
6
- 7 Ferrar, K.J., D.R. Michanowicz, C.L. Christen, N. Mulcahy, S.L. Malone, and R.K. Sharma. 2013.
8 Assessment of effluent contaminants from three facilities discharging Marcellus shale wastewater to
9 surface waters in Pennsylvania. *Environ. Sci. & Tech.* 47(7), p.3472-81. April 2, 2013.
10 dx.doi.org/10.1021/es301411q.
11
- 12 Jackson, R.B., E.R. Lowry, A. Pickle, M. Knag, D. DiGiulio, and K. Zhao. 2015. The depths of
13 hydraulic fracturing and accompanying water use across the United States. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*
14 49(15), p. 8969-8976. doi: 10.1021/acs.est.5b01228.
15
- 16 Llewellyn, G., F.L. Dorman, J.L. Westland, D. Yoxtheimer, P. Grieve, T. Sowers, E. Humston-Flumer,
17 and S.L. Brantley. 2015. Evaluating a groundwater supply contamination incident attributed to
18 Marcellus Shale gas development. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 112(20), 6325-
19 6330. May 19, 2015. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1420279112.
20
- 21 Leenheer, J.A., T.I. Noyes, and H.A. Stuber, 1982. Determination of polar organic solutes in oil-shale
22 retort water. *Environ. Sci. & Tech.* 16(10), p. 714-723. October 1982. doi: 10.1021/es00104a015.
23
- 24 Leri, A.C., and S.C.B. Myneni. 2012. Natural organobromine in terrestrial ecosystems. *Geochimica*
25 *Cosmochimica Acta* 77, p. 1-10. January 15, 2012. doi:10.1016/j.gca.2011.1011.1012.
26
- 27 Sloto, R.A. 2013. Baseline groundwater quality from 20 domestic wells in Sullivan County,
28 Pennsylvania, 2012. *U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report* 2013-5085.
29 <http://pubs.usgs.gov/sir/2013/5085/>.
30
- 31 States, S., G. Cyprych, M. Stoner, F. Wydra, J. Kuchta, J. Monnell, and L. Casson. 2013. Marcellus
32 Shale drilling and brominated THMs in Pittsburgh, Pa., drinking water. *J. American Water Works*
33 *Association* 105(8), p. E432-E448. August 2013. doi: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5942/jawwa.2013.105.0093>.
34
- 35 Vidic, R.D., S.L. Brantley, J.M. Vandenbossche, D. Yoxtheimer, and J.D. Abad. 2013. Impact of Shale
36 Gas Development on Regional Water Quality. *Science* 340(6134), p. 826-835. May 17, 2013.
37 DOI:10.1126/science.1235009.
38
- 39 Wilson, J.M., and J.M. VanBriesen. 2012. Oil and gas produced water management and surface drinking
40 water sources in Pennsylvania. *Environmental Practice* 14(4), p. 288-300. December 2012.
41 doi:10.1017/S1466046612000427.
42
- 43 WY Oil and Gas Commission, N.D., Appendix K Sampling and Analysis Procedures for the Wyoming
44 Oil and Gas Conservation Commission Groundwater Baseline Sampling, Analysis, and Monitoring
45 Program, Wyoming Oil and Gas Conservation Commission.

1 **3.6. Wastewater Treatment and Waste Disposal Stage in the HFWC**

2 *Question 6: The fifth stage in the HFWC focuses on wastewater treatment and waste disposal: the reuse,*
3 *treatment and release, or disposal of wastewater generated at the well pad. This is addressed in Chapter*
4 *8.*

- 5 a. *Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning*
6 *hydraulic fracturing wastewater management, treatment, and disposal?*
- 7 b. *Are the major findings concerning wastewater treatment and disposal fully supported by the*
8 *information and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the*
9 *potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other*
10 *major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency*
11 *or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?*
- 12 c. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning wastewater treatment and*
13 *waste disposal fully and clearly described?*
- 14 d. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
15 *should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources*
16 *from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be*
17 *added in this section of the report?*

18 Chapter 8 discusses wastewater treatment and waste disposal, in particular the reuse, treatment and
19 release, or disposal of wastewater generated at the well pad in the HFWC. The chapter describes
20 volumes of hydraulic fracturing wastewater (including estimates at national, regional, state and
21 formation-level estimation methods and their associated challenges), and wastewater characteristics
22 including a discussion on what is wastewater. The chapter discusses chemical constituents in wastewater
23 treatment residuals, wastewater management practices, underground injection for disposal, centralized
24 waste treatment facilities, hydraulic fracturing water reuse, evaporation, publicly owned treatment
25 works, and other management practices and issues. The chapter also describes treatment processes for
26 hydraulic fracturing wastewater, treatment of hydraulic fracturing waste constituents of concern, and
27 potential impacts on drinking water resources, and discusses hydraulic fracturing treatment issues
28 associated with bromide and chloride, radionuclides, metals, volatile organic compounds, semi-volatile
29 organic compounds, and oil and grease. The chapter concludes with a synthesis of major findings,
30 discussion on factors affecting the frequency or severity of impacts, and description of uncertainties.

31 **3.6.1. Summary of Available Information on Hydraulic Fracturing Wastewater Management,**
32 **Treatment and Disposal**

- 33
- 34 a. *Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning*
35 *hydraulic fracturing wastewater management, treatment, and disposal?*
36

37 Chapter 8 in the draft Assessment Report clearly and accurately summarizes a large amount of available
38 information concerning the management, treatment, and disposal of hydraulic fracturing wastewater.
39 However, the chapter should clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning the
40 regulatory framework for wastewater management; the fundamental principles of some of the treatment
41 technologies described; the occurrence and removal of disinfection by-product (DBP) precursors other
42 than bromide; additional aspects of “waste disposal,” including cuttings, drilling muds, and treatment
43 residuals; the locations of wastewater treatment and disposal facilities relative to downstream /
44 downgradient public water supply (PWS) intakes and wells; the potential impacts (increased risks) of

1 contaminant buildup in certain water reuse applications; trends in wastewater disposal methods,
2 including the scientific and economic drivers of these changes and their potential impacts on drinking
3 water resources; and the potential impacts of seismic activity on wastewater disposal (deep well
4 injection), on oil and gas (O&G) production infrastructure (e.g., damage to wells, storage vessels, and
5 pipelines transporting wastewater), and on PWS infrastructure (e.g., damage of public water supply
6 wells).

7
8 The regulatory framework for oversight of centralized water treatment facilities (CWTFs), and of
9 publicly owned treatment works (POTWs) receiving discharges of wastewater associated with hydraulic
10 fracturing, is inadequately described. Some regulatory information is provided in fragmentary and
11 anecdotal fashion (e.g., in Text Box 8-1), but the pertinent regulations are not clearly summarized, so it
12 is not clear to the reader who is responsible for each of the various aspects of wastewater treatment and
13 waste disposal discussed in Chapter 8. The report should specify: which, if any, local, state or federal
14 agencies regulate CWTFs and their residuals, including under which statutes [e.g., the Clean Water Act
15 (CWA)/National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), Resource Conservation and
16 Recovery Act (RCRA), and state regulations]; whether any exemptions for CWTFs exist; and whether
17 POTWs accepting wastewater discharges associated with oil and gas production are required to adopt a
18 sewer use ordinance limiting such discharges (or specific components thereof) before receiving an
19 NPDES permit, and whether the treatment residuals from these POTWs are exempt under RCRA.

20
21 While the summary of treatment technologies in Chapter 8 is generally adequate, the chapter requires
22 more accurate and fundamentally sound descriptions of some technologies and their performance.
23 Chapter 8 does not adequately consider temporal trends or costs of hydraulic fracturing water
24 purification technologies over the past decade, trends in wastewater disposal methods including the
25 scientific and economic drivers of these changes and their potential impacts on drinking water resources,
26 nor potential future trajectories (e.g., if deep well injection of wastewater is reduced because of
27 regulatory changes), and should include an assessment of these trends and costs. The draft Assessment
28 Report should use the EPA cost-curves or other comparative assessment tools to address relative capital
29 plus operation and maintenance costs for the major wastewater treatment technologies.

30
31 Chapter 8 should clearly and accurately summarize trends in oil and gas wastewater disposal. Disposal
32 techniques have changed significantly over the past 15 years, and are likely to continue changing. There
33 is inadequate scientific or economic description of the drivers for these changes. The economic costs
34 associated with different wastewater disposal options for hydraulic fracturing wastewater are not and
35 should be adequately summarized. The draft Assessment Report should also discuss likely future trends
36 in wastewater disposal, and describe and assess future uncertainties. For example, the draft Assessment
37 Report should discuss where hydraulic fracturing wastewaters would likely end up if seismic activity
38 leads to curtailment of deep well injection of hydraulic fracturing wastes, and what will be done with
39 hydraulic fracturing produced waters that are recycled if well drilling slows and there is less demand for
40 recycled water for hydraulic fracturing.

41
42 The draft Assessment Report should clarify what is meant by “waste disposal.” The title of Chapter 8
43 (Wastewater Treatment and Waste Disposal) is a bit ambiguous and the text does not make it
44 immediately clear to the reader whether “waste” includes only those wastes generated during wastewater
45 treatment or is more broadly construed to include other wastes associated with hydraulic fracturing.
46 While the draft Assessment Report does address treatment residuals, it should further describe the
47 management of other hydraulic fracturing wastes such as drill cuttings and drilling muds and the

1 potential of these materials to contaminate drinking water resources. The EPA should explicitly describe
2 and provide supporting documentation regarding the disposal route for these wastes, and whether
3 drilling wastes are normally disposed in regulated landfills having low potential to leach chemicals of
4 concern into nearby drinking water sources. The draft Assessment Report should also discuss how
5 hydraulic fracturing spill-contaminated soils, pond sediments, and other solid media contaminated by
6 hydraulic fracturing chemicals are managed and disposed, and whether the EPA considers these
7 contaminated media as “site reclamation” activities that the EPA excluded from this report (as noted on
8 p. ES-4). If so, the EPA should reiterate this point in Chapter 8 for clarity.
9

10 In Chapter 8 it is noted that empirical water/hydrocarbon ratios or per well estimates of production rates
11 times number of wells could be used to compute wastewater pollutant loading to determine the extent of
12 treatment effectiveness. However, the SAB finds that neither of these methods would provide accurate
13 information to compute wastewater pollutant loading to determine the extent of treatment effectiveness.
14

15 Chapter 8 describes typical wastewater characteristics for flowback and produced water with major
16 categories including organics, inorganics, total dissolved solids (TDS), and radionuclides. While the
17 description provided for TDS and inorganic characteristics for flowback and produced water wastewater
18 is adequate (Abualfaraj, N., et al., 2014; Fan, W., et al., 2014; Kondash, A.J., et al., 2014; Lester, Y., et
19 al., 2015; and Wang, L., et al., 2014), the organic composition of flowback/produced water is not
20 adequately described within the draft Assessment Report. This may be because there is a major gap in
21 knowledge of hydraulic fracturing chemicals that are designated as confidential business information
22 (CBI), and that a significant portion of hydraulic fracturing injection fluid chemicals being used by
23 operators are considered proprietary information. The sphere of unknown chemicals is further enlarged
24 by the fact that subsurface reactions can change the structure and toxicity of both known and unknown
25 compounds. The EPA tried to express some of that uncertainty in Chapter 8, but certain statements
26 within the chapter on this topic are confusing, such as the following statement on page 8-11: “*Certain*
27 *organic compounds are of concern in drinking water because they can cause damage to the nervous*
28 *system, kidneys, and/or liver and can increase the risk of cancer if ingested over a period of time (U.S.*
29 *EPA, 2006). Some organics in chemical additives are known carcinogens, including 2-butoxyethanol*
30 *(2BE), naphthalene, benzene, and polyacrylamide (Hammer and VanBriesen, 2012). Many organics are*
31 *regulated for drinking water under the National Primary Drinking Water Regulations.*” Such statements
32 suggest that if organic compounds do not fall into these categories, then there may not be a concern
33 regarding such compounds. To address these concerns that the draft Assessment Report contains limited
34 information on chemical identity and concentrations in hydraulic flowback and produced water, the
35 agency should acknowledge that there is a lack of information on what is being injected, and should
36 describe these concerns regarding its reliance on FracFocus data within the draft Assessment Report.
37 Within the draft Assessment Report, the agency should also characterize in some way data on
38 proprietary compounds that the EPA may have, and information provided in FracFocus on chemical
39 class and concentration (% mass of hydraulic fracturing fluid). As the FracFocus data that the agency
40 assessed was current up to February 2013, the SAB also recommends that the draft Assessment Report
41 include data from more recent versions of FracFocus.
42

43 Regarding the residuals generated from wastewater treatment, given the processes used to remove many
44 of the contaminants discussed in Chapter 8, various contaminants can become highly concentrated in the
45 residuals. While treatment residuals may contain sufficiently high concentrations of metals, TDS,
46 radionuclides, and organics that these residuals could be classified as hazardous waste under RCRA
47 rules based on their concentrations, residuals associated with oil and gas operations have an existing

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

1 exclusion from being considered hazardous waste under RCRA (EPA 40 CFR 261.4(b)). The draft
2 Assessment Report should clarify which specific hydraulic fracturing wastes (including treatment
3 residuals) are exempt under RCRA, whether management of these wastes is governed by other federal or
4 state regulations, and how these wastes are actually managed. Since hydraulic fracturing treatment
5 residuals and other wastes can be a significant source of leaching of hazardous chemicals into the
6 environment if not properly managed, the draft Assessment Report should clearly and accurately
7 summarize available information on this topic.

8
9 In Table F-2 on page F-15 of the draft Assessment Report, “Organics” should be divided into
10 particulate, liquid, dissolved, and perhaps emulsified states. Mechanisms (and processes) for removing
11 these different types (states) of organic matter differ greatly, and lumping them together oversimplifies
12 such mechanisms and processes and will almost certainly cause confusion in the minds of at least some
13 readers.

14
15 In Section 8.6.1.2 of the draft Assessment Report, the EPA used modeling to examine strategies for
16 reducing the impact of bromide on downstream users. The EPA should have included a description of
17 the model and its assumptions. The agency should reconsider or reassess its use of modeling to
18 determine definitive strategies for reducing impacts on PWS, since experimental data that was reported
19 earlier in this section of the draft Assessment Report discusses how significant dilution of waters
20 containing bromide may not reduce levels to background concentrations.

21
22 Although N-Nitrosodimethylamine (NDMA) is mentioned in Appendix F (p. F-28), the discussion there
23 focuses on the possible role of bromide in forming NDMA and on possible future regulation of NDMA
24 and other nitrosamines. The potential for hydraulic fracturing wastewaters to form nitrosamines is
25 otherwise ignored. There is no mention of NDMA in Chapter 8. Considering that (1) hydraulic
26 fracturing wastewaters may contain high levels of known NDMA precursors (including bromide,
27 ammonia, and amines), (2) industrial discharges have been found to pose significant problems with
28 respect to NDMA formation (e.g., for the Orange County Water District’s Ground Water Replenishment
29 System), and (3) disinfection of water and wastewater can potentially result in formation of problematic
30 levels of NDMA, increased NDMA formation is a potentially significant impact of hydraulic fracturing
31 wastewater discharges on drinking water resources. The EPA should add additional analyses on the
32 potential for hydraulic fracturing wastewaters to form nitrosamines within the draft Assessment Report.
33 Also, the EPA should further describe how the reported high levels of Total Kjeldahl Nitrogen (TKN)
34 for some samples (e.g., on p. E-8) are also of concern, since TKN includes nitrogenous organic
35 compounds that may also be NDMA precursors.

36
37 On page F-28, lines 19-20 of the draft Assessment Report, in the discussion on drinking water treatment
38 at downstream drinking water treatment plants, the text states that: “*Studies generally report that the*
39 *ratios of halogen incorporation into DBPs reflect the ratio of halogen concentrations in the source*
40 *water.*” Though technically true, the statement is misleading in that bromide is preferentially
41 incorporated into halogenated DBPs and needs to be revised. The SAB notes that up to half of the
42 bromide in a given raw water supply may be incorporated into halogenated DBPs during drinking water
43 treatment at downstream drinking water treatment plants, while less than one percent of the chloride
44 may be consumed in this manner. The Br-to-Cl ratio in the DBPs can be orders of magnitude higher than
45 the ratio in the raw water. (Hua, G.H., et al., 2006; Obolensky, A., and P.C. Singer, 2005; and
46 Westerhoff, P., et al., 2004).

1 Some hydraulic fracturing wastewaters may contain significant concentrations of antiscalants. If
2 antiscalants are used in preparation of hydraulic fracturing fluids, then some may contain various
3 complexing agents used for other purposes besides scale control. Such chemicals may, if added to
4 drinking water in sufficient amounts, influence the transport and fate of metal ions, and adversely impact
5 metal ion removal by various treatment processes. Chapter 8 should address this potential concern.
6

7 In addition, Chapter 8 of the draft Assessment Report does not provide data on bromate,
8 chlorate/chlorite, perchlorate or iodate. All of these chemicals have human toxicity endpoints and some
9 have MCLs, and the EPA should describe whether these compounds are ever found in hydraulic
10 fracturing waters. The SAB finds that the EPA's discussion on halogens in Chapter 8 is mostly limited
11 to chloride and is inadequate.
12

13 The draft Assessment Report includes a number of inaccurate statements regarding treatment
14 technologies and the removal mechanisms involved, and the SAB recommends that the EPA correct
15 these statements to address concerns noted below:
16

- 17 • On page 8-38, electrocoagulation is characterized as an “*emerging technology*.” Perhaps it has only
18 recently begun to be used (or tested for use) to treat hydraulic fracturing wastewater, but the
19 technology is a niche technology that been available for decades. Fundamentally, it is simply another
20 way to add metal salt coagulants to water, which has been a common water treatment process for
21 well over a century. Coagulation has long been used to treat wastewaters containing emulsified oils
22 or small droplets of oil (page 8-68), such as refinery wastewaters. It seems inappropriate to lump this
23 technology together with technologies that are clearly both new and emerging, such as forward
24 osmosis. Also, the draft Assessment Report notes (page 8-47) that recent tests of electrocoagulation
25 “*illustrated challenges, with removal efficiencies affected by factors such as pH and salt content.*”
26 These challenges have also been well known for many decades. See, for example, the EPA-600/8-
27 77/005 (Manual of Treatment Technologies for Meeting the Interim Primary Drinking Water
28 Regulations) for information on the effects of pH and chemical dosage on removal of selected metals
29 by coagulation.
30
- 31 • In some places the report refers to “bromine” whereas in other places the report refers to “bromide.”
32 In the absence of oxidants, it will be present as bromide, and the report should be consistent in this
33 regard.
34
- 35 • On page 8-46, the draft Assessment Report states that “*TSS can be removed by several processes,*
36 *such as coagulation, flocculation, sedimentation, and filtration (including microfiltration and media*
37 *and bag and/or cartridge filtration), and with hydrocyclones, dissolved air flotation, freeze-thaw*
38 *evaporation, electrocoagulation, and biological aerated filters.*” The SAB notes that coagulation,
39 flocculation, and electrocoagulation do not “*remove*” TSS. Coagulation and electrocoagulation
40 destabilize colloidal particles (often by neutralizing their charge), allowing them to aggregate into
41 larger particles so they can be aggregated (flocculated) into larger particles that are more readily
42 removed by processes designed to remove particles, such as sedimentation, filtration, and dissolved
43 air flotation.
44
- 45 • On pages 8-46 and 8-47, the draft Assessment Report states that monovalent ions are not removed
46 by basic treatment processes and require more advanced treatment such as nanofiltration. The SAB

1 notes that nanofiltration removes divalent ions well, but typically achieves little or no removal of
2 monovalent ions.

- 3
- 4 • On page 8-47, the draft Assessment Report states that “*Media filtration can remove metals if*
5 *coagulation / oxidation is implemented prior to filtration.*” This is a gross oversimplification of the
6 processes involved. Metals can be present in both particulate and dissolved forms. Those present in
7 particulate form can be often be effectively removed by filtration; but, depending on the
8 characteristics of the particles and the filter, coagulation and flocculation may be required prior to
9 filtration. Dissolved metals can only be removed by filtration if they are first incorporated into
10 particles, which could occur if they are precipitated (e.g., precipitation of barium as BaSO₄) or
11 adsorbed onto solids such as iron or aluminum oxides produced by coagulation, various other
12 precipitates, or powdered activated carbon. However, only certain combinations are effective.
13 Furthermore, although oxidation promotes the removal of some metals (such as Fe²⁺ and Mn²⁺), it
14 hinders the removal of chromium by converting it to a more soluble (and more toxic) form (Cr⁶⁺).
15
 - 16 • On page 8-47, the draft Assessment Report states that “*Advanced treatment processes such as ...*
17 *nanofiltration can remove dissolved metals and metalloids.*” Nanofiltration is normally effective
18 only for those dissolved metals present in multivalent form.
19
 - 20 • On page 8-64, the draft Assessment Report states that “*Radium ... and will also co-precipitate*
21 *calcium, barium, and strontium in sulfate minerals.*” Radium is present in only trace amounts, but
22 can be co-precipitated (removed from solution) when a sufficient amount of sulfate is added to
23 precipitate calcium, magnesium, or barium. Carbonate addition, forming calcium carbonate, would
24 also be expected to work reasonably well. It may be unlikely that enough radium would ever be
25 present for it to form a precipitate and for the other metals to then be co-precipitated with radium
26 sulfate. Co-precipitation, by definition, is the incorporation of a substance into a precipitate when it
27 would have remained in solution had the precipitate not formed. SAB suggests that the EPA reword
28 this sentence to read: “*Radium ... can also be removed by co-precipitation if sulfate or carbonate is*
29 *added to hydraulic fracturing wastewater to precipitate calcium, barium, or strontium.*”
30
 - 31 • On page 8-65, the draft Assessment Report states that “*Common treatment processes, such as*
32 *coagulation, are effective at removing many metals.*” As noted above, “coagulation” *per se* does not
33 remove metals. Coagulation can facilitate removal of metal-containing particles by neutralizing their
34 charge, and precipitates formed by metal-salt coagulants can adsorb (co-precipitate) certain metal
35 ions, depending on the ability of the metal to adsorb to the precipitate and other factors such as pH,
36 ionic strength, and the presence of competing ions.
37
 - 38 • On page 8-66, line 23, aeration is listed as a process able to remove volatile organic compounds
39 (VOCs). Although the term “aeration” is often used to describe this process, it is more accurately
40 referred to as “air stripping.”
41
 - 42 • On page F-7, electrocoagulation is said to be “... *less effective for removing TDS and sulfate.*” This
43 technology is simply not effective at all for removing TDS and sulfate, nor is any other coagulation
44 process, except perhaps under extreme conditions one would not expect to encounter in practice.
45 Any incidental removal associated with changes in pH or ionic composition could be just as readily
46 and less expensively obtained by simply adding the appropriate acid, base, or salt.
47 Electrocoagulation is correctly characterized in Table F-2, page F-15, as “not effective” for TDS and

1 anion removal; and it “removes” TSS and organics only to the extent that coagulated solids
2 (including organic solids), and dissolved organics coprecipitated with the coagulated solids, are
3 removed by subsequent treatment processes that removal particles.
4

- 5 • On page F-9, the draft Assessment Report notes that electro dialysis relies on “*positively and*
6 *negatively charged particles and coated membranes to separate contaminants from the water.*” This
7 statement is incorrect. The process relies on positive and negative charges (provided by electrodes,
8 not particles) that repel or attract anions and cations, causing them to pass through anion and cation
9 exchange membranes, respectively. Stacks of these membranes (alternating cation and anion
10 exchange membranes) separate the water into channels alternately enriched with dissolved solids or
11 depleted. The channels are segregated and manifolded together to produce a concentrate (brine)
12 stream and a fresh-water stream.
13
- 14 • On page F-10, the draft Assessment Report states: “*Forward osmosis, an emerging technology for*
15 *treating hydraulic fracturing wastewater, uses an osmotic pressure gradient across a membrane to*
16 *draw the contaminants from a low osmotic solution (the feed water) to a high osmotic solution.*”
17 This is incorrect. Only water passes through the membrane, not salts. The water is drawn into the
18 “high osmotic solution,” which is made using a volatile salt such as ammonium carbonate that can
19 be driven off with heat, leaving behind pure water. The volatile salt is then condensed and reused.
20
- 21 • In Table F-2, page F-16, the draft Assessment Report indicates that electro dialysis (ED) is very
22 effective for removing organics. However, this technology is very ineffective for nearly all organics.
23 Particulate organics, oil and grease, and high molecular weight organic anions foul ED membranes
24 (which are ion-exchange membranes), either ruining them or significantly shortening their life. Only
25 small, charged organic ions could potentially be removed, but removal would probably be rather
26 poor in most cases.

27 **3.6.2. Major Findings**

28
29 *b1. Are the major findings concerning wastewater treatment and disposal fully supported by the*
30 *information and data presented in the assessment?*
31

32 The major findings concerning wastewater treatment and disposal are not fully supported by the
33 information and data presented in Chapter 8. The available information and data do not support the
34 conclusion in the chapter (page 8-75) that “*there is no evidence that these contaminants have affected*
35 *drinking water facilities.*” In addition, page 8-68 of the draft Assessment Report describes the
36 “Summary of Findings,” and begins with the statement that: “*Hundreds of billions of gallons of*
37 *wastewater are generated annually in the United States by the oil and gas industry.*” This statement is
38 qualified, and the limitations of the methodologies are explained, in part, in Section 8.2.3 (page 8-9).
39 However, Chapter 8 of the draft Assessment Report should clearly and accurately describe the basis for
40 these statements. In addition, the EPA should provide a validated approach to predict future wastewater
41 generation trends and describe uncertainty in these predictions. The basis for the wastewater generation
42 estimate is not very clear, and efforts to find it in the draft Assessment Report were complicated by the
43 many disparate estimates (for different years or time periods, different groups of states, and different
44 segments of the industry) in various places in the Report and by the different units of volume and
45 flowrate used in the report (appropriately used, but nevertheless confusing to the readers). To provide
46 more clarity regarding this statement, the SAB recommends that the EPA include a table in Chapter 8

1 that more clearly illustrates the basis for this particular estimate, since it is arguably a “major finding.”
2 Such a table could perhaps include reasonable estimates derived from several sources, including
3 correction factors applied to adjust for increased production over time and for other factors, and the
4 range of estimates from which the “hundreds of billions of gallons” estimate emerged.

5 On page 8-70, line 29, of the draft Assessment Report, in the discussion on drinking water treatment at
6 downstream drinking water treatment plants, the text notes that bromide is of “*concern due to the*
7 *formation of disinfection by-products (DBPs).*” The SAB notes that bromide does not simply form DBPs
8 - it also increases both the rate and extent of THM and HAA formation. The draft Assessment Report
9 states on page 8-60 that “... *brominated and iodinated [DBPs] are considered more toxic than other*
10 *types of DBPs (Richardson et al., 2007)*” and on page 8-70 that “*Brominated DBPs (and iodinated*
11 *DBPs) are more toxic than other species of DBPs.*” The draft Assessment Report should clarify whether
12 these statements are based on toxic effects observed in cell cultures or on human toxicity data. If the
13 former, the type of cells tested and the relevant references should be noted; if the latter, supporting
14 references should be cited. Since humans differ greatly from cell cultures, and chemicals that cause
15 toxicity in cell cultures (cytotoxicity) may not be toxic to humans, the EPA should revise the text to note
16 that brominated and iodinated DBPs may be more toxic to humans than DBPs containing chlorine as the
17 only halogen species, based on their toxicity to cells. Unless the EPA is able to find data to the contrary,
18 the chapter should also note that there are no data currently available to prove that this is the case for
19 humans. If human toxicity data are available, then the EPA should cite the appropriate references.

20
21 On page 8-72, lines 3-4, the draft Assessment Report states: “*There may be consequences for*
22 *downstream drinking water systems if the sediments are disturbed or entrained due to dredging or flood*
23 *events.*” The EPA should more clearly summarize these consequences, and provide an example or two
24 to clarify this statement. Since water treatment plants are typically well equipped to remove suspended
25 solids, and since the sediments would already have been sitting in water for an extended period of time
26 (such that hazardous chemicals soluble in water would already have had an opportunity to leach out of
27 them), the EPA should assess and describe how such entrained or disturbed sediments may have
28 potentially adverse impacts on drinking water quality.

29
30 *b2. Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage*
31 *of the HFWC?*

32
33 Potential impacts to drinking water resources are not adequately addressed in Chapter 8. The EPA
34 should describe potential impacts from other DBPs besides THMs and HAAs that are produced in
35 drinking water treatment when intake water contains some amount of hydraulic fracturing wastewater. .

36 Since deep well injection systems for oil and gas wastewater disposal are not uniformly distributed
37 among the different states or within states, and the risk of a spill presumably increases with an increase
38 in the distance the wastewater needs to be transported to a disposal well, the EPA should include further
39 discussion within the draft Assessment Report on how deep well injection siting proximity to production
40 wells, water intakes and water supply wells may influence potential impacts on drinking water quality.

41
42 An additional concern about injection wells for oil and gas wastewater disposal is their potential impact
43 on seismic activity and the resulting impacts on the surrounding drilling infrastructure. The draft
44 Assessment Report does not mention anything about reporting of seismic activity discussed in the
45 literature (Ellsworth, 2013; Yeck et al., 2015; Weingartern et al., 2015; McNamara et al., 2015) related
46 to deep well injection. The SAB recommends that the EPA include discussion on this issue in Chapter 8,

1 and assess how this issue may affect operator selection of appropriate flow rates and pressures to
2 minimize or eliminate significant seismic events when this management approach is selected.

3
4 The draft Assessment Report should note that reuse of wastewater to prepare hydraulic fracturing fluids
5 may significantly increase the concentrations of various contaminants (e.g., TDS and radionuclides) in
6 both the flowback and produced water. This would especially occur if the reused water is only partially
7 treated or if new hydraulic fracturing fluid technologies that can tolerate significantly higher TDS
8 concentrations are utilized (which could possibly alleviate the need to even partially treat wastewater
9 before it is reused). The draft Assessment Report should note that the storage of any reused water with
10 these elevated contaminant concentrations can be a potential leak/spill source for impacting local
11 drinking water resources.

12
13 Chapter 8 of the draft Assessment Report cites limited studies that investigated radionuclides in effluents
14 from POTWs, CWTs, and zero-liquid-discharge facilities. Based on the reporting of the data, the EPA
15 noted that POTWs receiving wastewater from hydraulic fracturing-related CWTs did not show higher
16 effluent radionuclide concentrations than POTWs not receiving such waste streams. However, the draft
17 Assessment Report should note that the reported concentrations were all significantly elevated above the
18 MCLs and several orders of magnitude above background river levels. In addition, the draft Assessment
19 Report should further describe that radionuclides (TENORMs) may pose a significant risk since
20 treatment processes used to remove other constituents (such as metals, biological oxygen demand
21 (BOD), or TDS) from these hydraulic fracturing wastewaters may not remove radionuclides to levels
22 that are protective of public health (depending on the influent concentration). While the draft
23 Assessment Report does mention these topics, it should emphasize these as topics of significant concern.
24 The draft Assessment Report should also acknowledge that other strategies for disposal of treated
25 wastewater from CWTs include deep well injection and reuse, and that these strategies also have
26 similar concerns with respect to spills and leaks.

27
28 The draft Assessment Report does not provide sufficient discussion on where residuals from zero-liquid
29 discharge facilities or reuse facilities end up, and should add to the discussion on this topic. Since these
30 residuals concentrate many water soluble pollutants that could potentially find their way into drinking
31 water resources if not properly managed, the draft Assessment Report should clearly and accurately
32 summarize available information regarding the regulatory framework applicable to these wastes.

33
34 Chapter 8 provides a limited review of the different unit processes that can be used to reduce various
35 types of pollutants known to be commonly present in hydraulic fracturing flowback water and produced
36 water (Table 8-6). The chapter should recognize that there are no data on the removal of unknown
37 hydraulic fracturing constituents, and that the presence of these unknown chemical constituents results
38 in a significant amount of uncertainty in the selection of a management strategy that involves discharges
39 into a drinking water resource, land application, and road spreading.

40
41 To help assess the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing wastewaters on drinking water resources, the
42 EPA should consider mapping of all regulated injection well sites in the U.S. relative to locations of
43 intakes for drinking water treatment plants, and the locations of domestic wells. Inclusion of such maps
44 with a corresponding analysis within the draft Assessment Report would strengthen the examination of
45 the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing wastewaters on drinking water resources.

46
47 *b3. Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward?*

1
2 Chapter 8 of the draft Assessment Report did not bring forward all the major findings associated with
3 the wastewater treatment and waste disposal phase of the HFWC. The draft Assessment Report does not
4 mention that elevated radionuclide concentrations are likely to be present in the effluents from some
5 CWTFs and most POTWs treating hydraulic fracturing-related wastewaters. The study that the draft
6 Assessment Report cited as evidence of significant removal of radionuclides used data from another
7 study, and not direct evidence, to estimate removal. The draft Assessment Report notes that effluent
8 radium concentrations from CWTFs and zero-discharge facilities were on the order of thousands of
9 pCi/L. The SAB is concerned that the zero discharge facilities that will produce water for reuse will
10 have extremely high radium concentrations that will consequently pose an elevated risk if leaks or spills
11 of these reuse waters occurs. Within the draft Assessment Report, the EPA describes a study that
12 assumed a 3-log reduction in radium concentration using co-precipitation with barium sulfate. However,
13 this cited study did not actually measure the influent concentration. The SAB recommends that the EPA
14 include an assessment of the potential accumulation of radium in pipe scales, sediments, and residuals;
15 the potential for leaching of this radium into drinking water resources; and the potential impacts of such
16 leaching.

17
18 The use of CWTFs is a management strategy to reduce the pollutant load from flowback and produced
19 wastewater. While Chapter 8 discusses the unit processes typically used at these facilities, the draft
20 Assessment Report should further describe that these processes may not be able to reduce the
21 concentrations to levels that allow for discharge to a drinking water resource. Examples of constituents
22 and discharge limits specified in NPDES discharge permits for CWTFs would be informative to include.
23 Due to the non-disclosure of chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing injection fluids and to unknown
24 subsurface reactions that affect the quality of flowback and produced water, the draft Assessment Report
25 should address directly the extent to which the EPA can assess whether the effluent water from CWTFs
26 is treated to a level that provides sufficient environmental and public health protection. An additional
27 point regarding the discussion of CWTFs is that many of the descriptions of unit processes used are very
28 general and sometimes incorrectly described. As discussed in the response to Charge Question 4a, these
29 descriptions should be corrected.

30
31 The draft Assessment Report should also assess iodide in the same manner as bromides would be
32 assessed as recommended in the response to sub-question b1 above, even though the draft Assessment
33 Report provides very little data on the presence of iodide in flowback or produced waters. During
34 drinking water treatment at downstream drinking water treatment plants, since iodide also reacts with
35 some oxidants to produce DBPs, and recent evidence shows that brominated and iodinated DBPs are
36 more cyto- and geno-toxic than the chlorinated analogs (Plewa, M.J., et al., 2009), information about
37 iodide in waste waters should be amplified in draft Assessment Report. The ratio of Cl/I in Table E-4 is
38 around 5000/1 which is much lower (i.e., more iodide) than the ratio in seawater which is 35,000/1. The
39 EPA should discuss why iodide is more concentrated in flowback and produced water relative to Cl than
40 seawater.

41

1 **3.6.3. Frequency or Severity of Impacts**

2
3 *b4. Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and*
4 *fully supported?*

5
6 Chapter 8 does not adequately address the potential frequency and severity of impacts of hydraulic
7 fracturing wastewater treatment and waste disposal on drinking water quality, nor potential scenarios in
8 the near future that could influence such impacts (e.g., reduced access to deep well injection due to
9 restrictions associated with seismic activity). The EPA should more clearly describe the potential
10 frequency and severity of impacts associated with the wastewater treatment and waste disposal stage in
11 the HFWC, before drawing conclusions on water quality impacts associated with this stage of the
12 HFWC. Factors affecting the frequency or severity of potential impacts are not adequately described for
13 either private wells or municipal water systems.

14
15 There is inadequate information and analysis in the draft Assessment Report, including Appendix E,
16 related to bromide and iodide. Bromide is important for drinking water because upon addition of
17 oxidants or disinfectants (chlorine, ozone) brominated disinfection by-products form in drinking water
18 (e.g., brominated THM or HAA, bromate). The ratio of Cl/Br in Table E-4 is roughly 200/1, which is
19 lower than the ratio in seawater (~300/1) and lower than the ~300/1 ratio observed in an American
20 Water Works Association (AWWA) national survey of bromide in drinking waters (Amy, G., 1994).
21 The EPA should describe the reasons for elevated bromide in these flowback and produced waters,
22 relative to chloride, and further describe the severity of impacts associated with bromide in these waters.

23
24 Additional data are needed on DBP formation in drinking water treatment plants downstream from
25 CWTFs or from POTWs receiving hydraulic-fracturing related wastewater. The draft Assessment
26 Report should discuss what are the fluctuations in total organic halide (TOX) at water treatment plants
27 downstream from CWTFs or from POTWs receiving discharges of hydraulic fracturing-related
28 wastewater, since upstream POTWs and CWTFs likely receive “pulses” or “extended releases” of high
29 salinity water. The draft Assessment Report should also describe the NPDES permits for CWTFs and
30 POTWs receiving hydraulic-fracturing related wastewater, and note whether these permits regulate
31 based upon grab samples. The EPA should also describe whether impacted POTWs are required to
32 install and/or would benefit from installation of real-time conductivity meters. The SAB notes that
33 pulses of Br⁻, I⁻ or other salts to downstream WTPs can lead to pulses of DBPs in distribution systems.
34 This is relevant because the EPA recognizes the potential for acute health risks to sensitive populations
35 (e.g., pregnant women) from exposure to high levels of DBPs.

36
37 Naturally occurring organic matter, typically measured as TOC or DOC, is a well-known major
38 precursor for formation of a broad spectrum of disinfection by-products in drinking water treatment,
39 including THMs and HAAs. Hydraulic fracturing wastewater can contain very high levels of TOC (e.g.,
40 as indicated by the data shown on pages E-9, E-25, and E-27). The draft Assessment Report
41 inadequately describes the potential for the organic matter in hydraulic fracturing wastewater to form
42 THMs, HAAs, and other by-products during drinking water treatment at downstream drinking water
43 treatment plants, and when present in PWS intake water and subjected to oxidation treatment for
44 disinfection, which could be readily evaluated using simple DBP formation potential tests. The EPA
45 previously noted that research on the DBP formation potential of hydraulic fracturing-related
46 wastewaters was important to conduct, as described in the EPA’s research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011),
47 and the SAB recommends that the EPA describe these issues in the draft Assessment Report.

1
2 HF wastewaters can contain high concentrations of ammonium (e.g., as shown on page E-7), which can
3 interfere with drinking water treatment by increasing chlorine demand and by converting free chlorine to
4 chloramines. The latter poses a significant risk to human health if the water treatment plant operators are
5 not aware that ammonium is present and therefore assume that the chlorine they add will be present as
6 free chlorine rather than combined chlorine; the draft Assessment Report should describe this scenario.
7 Also, the draft Assessment Report should mention the chlorine demand associated with hydraulic
8 fracturing wastewaters, which if significant could also adversely impact drinking water treatment plants.
9

10 Strontium is mentioned a number of times in Chapter 8. The draft Assessment Report lacked discussion
11 of the EPA's plans to regulate (establish an MCL for) Sr in drinking water, as the agency announced in
12 2014. The current Health Reference Level is only 4 mg/L. Since hydraulic fracturing wastewater can
13 contain hundreds to over a thousand mg/L of Sr (page 8-65), discharge of even of small amount of
14 inadequately treated hydraulic fracturing wastewater to a drinking water source could compromise a
15 water utility's ability to comply with the anticipated MCL for strontium. The frequency and severity of
16 impacts associated with strontium in hydraulic fracturing wastewaters should be acknowledged in the
17 report.

18 **3.6.4. Uncertainties, Assumptions and Limitations**

19
20 *c. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning wastewater treatment and waste*
21 *disposal fully and clearly described?*
22

23 Chapter 8 of the draft Assessment Report does not fully and clearly describe uncertainties, assumptions,
24 and limitations concerning wastewater treatment and waste disposal.

25 CWT unit processes and disposal techniques have changed significantly over the past 15 years, and are
26 likely to continue changing. The report does not adequately describe past trends or anticipated future
27 developments in treatment of produced water, nor does it adequately address future uncertainties. For
28 example, the draft Assessment Report should describe where hydraulic fracturing-related wastewaters
29 would likely end up if significant seismic activity leads to curtailment of deep well injection of wastes,
30 and what will be done with produced waters that are recycled if well drilling slows and there is less
31 demand for recycled water for hydraulic fracturing.
32

33 A key limitation of Chapter 8 is that, although this chapter addresses potential impacts of wastewater
34 treatment and disposal from a watershed perspective, especially in Section 8.6, the chapter should put
35 into a watershed perspective CWTs discharging to surface waters or POTWs (Table 8-4, page 8-24), or
36 other treatment and disposal facilities, such as disposal wells.. Chapter 3 provided information regarding
37 the number of PWSs within 1 mile of a hydraulically fractured well. Such information can be useful in
38 assessing the potential impacts of spilled liquids and migration through faults, especially if viewed in a
39 three-dimensional setting. Additional analyses of this type for the range of facilities noted would provide
40 more insight into risks to drinking water resources.
41

42 Chapter 8 inadequately describes potential impacts on public drinking water supplies that rely upon
43 intakes from surface waters located in watersheds downstream of hydraulic fracturing activities or
44 discharges of hydraulic fracturing wastewaters. Many drinking water systems rely upon surface water
45 supplies which could be located many miles downstream of hydraulic fracturing sites, but subject to

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

1 impacts from hydraulic fracturing wastewater discharges (e.g., States et al., 2013, which is cited in the
2 draft Assessment Report). In order to assess this topic, a variety of information is needed including the
3 size and location of injection wells, CWTFs, POTWs receiving wastewater discharges (directly or
4 indirectly), drinking water treatment facilities as well as the locations of streams and lakes and their
5 flowrates and volumes, respectively. There are relatively few CWTFs known to be discharging to
6 surface waters or POTWs (Table 8-4), and the EPA should provide information on the contributions that
7 CWTFs may make to TDS, regulated contaminants, and other contaminants of concern in downstream
8 PWSs. The EPA should also provide similar information for any POTWs known to be still accepting
9 wastewater associated with hydraulic fracturing.

10
11 On page 8-70 of the draft Assessment Report, the summary of findings states that modeling suggests
12 that small percentages of hydraulic fracturing wastewater in a river may cause a notable increase in DBP
13 formation in a drinking water treatment plant. Experimental data from a literature study described that
14 effect. Modeling was used to propose and evaluate strategies for diluting bromide to lessen impacts on
15 downstream drinking water resources. The EPA's use of modeling is not adequately supported, as
16 inadequate information is provided regarding the modeling approach, parameters involved, assumptions
17 made, and whether any sensitivity or uncertainty analysis was performed to estimate the probable range
18 of possible answers. The EPA should explicitly describe this information within the draft Assessment
19 Report. If this information is included in the draft Assessment Report, the limitations associate with the
20 modeling should be explicitly identified and the results should be appropriately qualified.

21
22 In the uncertainty section (8.7.3) of Chapter 8, it is stated on page 8-73 that limited monitoring data may
23 be available from CWTFs with NPDES permits. Although the draft Assessment Report notes that
24 monitored constituents may be limited, the discharge permit holders may not test for even a small
25 fraction of the constituents found in hydraulic fracturing-related wastewater. The EPA has not and
26 should present monitoring requirements and analyses associated with NPDES permits for CWTFs and
27 evaluate the extent to which existing permits protect drinking water resources from hydraulic fracturing-
28 related wastewater discharges from CWTFs or POTWs.

29
30 The draft Assessment Report should describe the treatment capacity (in millions of gallons per day,
31 MGD) of the CWTFs identified in Table 8-4, relative to the annual produced water volume within a
32 fixed distance (e.g., 100 miles). There EPA should also provide adequate justification for limiting
33 analysis to 1 mile. The EPA should also develop maps of watersheds that have drinking water treatment
34 plants located down-gradient from active or planned hydraulic fracturing activities for oil or gas
35 development. Limiting proximity analysis to 1 mile results in considerable uncertainty associated with
36 potential impacts to drinking water resources. A Geographic Information System (GIS)-based research
37 method is available that can be used to estimate the number of drinking water treatment plants with
38 upstream municipal wastewater discharges (Rice, J. et al., 2015a; and Rice, J. and P. Westerhoff,
39 2015b). The EPA should conduct similar work to understand potential risks to municipal surface water
40 drinking water intakes greater than 1 mile away from hydraulic fracturing-related treatment and disposal
41 facilities.

1 **3.6.5. Additional Information, Background or Context to be Added**

2
3 *d1. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should be*
4 *assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from this stage of the*
5 *HFWC?*

6
7 The EPA should include various additional and important information into the draft Assessment Report,
8 including the following research described in the final Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) and the EPA’s
9 December 2012 Progress Report (U.S. EPA, 2012). Specifically, this includes the results of laboratory
10 experiments to simulate wastewater treatment processes to assess their ability to remove a range of
11 pollutants, such as radionuclides, VOCs, anions, metals, and inorganics, as well as DBP formation
12 potential tests on hydraulic fracturing fluids, produced waters, and treated and untreated hydraulic
13 fracturing-related wastewaters. While a limited number of such tests were performed in studies cited in
14 the draft Assessment Report, the SAB recommends that the EPA conduct these additional research
15 efforts.

16 The draft Assessment Report also includes little or no information on, or discussion of, several
17 important DBPs (including bromate and nitrosamines such as NDMA) and stakeholder activities (e.g.,
18 Technical Workshop 2011, Technical Roundtable 2012, Technical Workshop 2013), and this
19 information should be described within the draft Assessment Report.

20 The draft Assessment Report concludes, in its summary of findings on page 8-68 that “*Hundreds of*
21 *billions of gallons of wastewater are generated annually in the United States by the oil and gas*
22 *industry.*” While this statement is qualified in the text and its limitations are explained in part in Section
23 8.2.3 on page 8-9 of the draft Assessment Report, the EPA should provide a more clear explanation of
24 the basis for this estimate. The EPA also should more clearly and consistently describe the estimates that
25 are provided on this topic in various different locations within the draft Assessment Report, and
26 consistently describe units of volume and flowrate. While this statement, unlike other statements in the
27 draft Assessment Report, applies to the entire oil and gas industry rather than unconventional hydraulic
28 fracturing wells, and the draft Assessment Report explains that it was difficult to come up with an
29 estimate pertaining specifically to unconventional wells, but the draft Assessment Report appears to
30 include sufficient information to allow such an estimate to be made.

31 Also, based on the title of this chapter, Chapter 8 addresses both wastewater treatment and waste
32 disposal. While the draft Assessment Report does briefly address wastewater treatment residuals, the
33 draft Assessment Report provides little information regarding other wastes associated with hydraulic
34 fracturing such as drill cuttings and drilling muds, and their potential to contaminate drinking water
35 resources, and should provide more information and analyses on these topics.

36 *d2. Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?*

37
38 The SAB recommends that the EPA consider the following additional literature sources within this
39 chapter of the draft Assessment Report:

40
41 References on Seismic Activity

42
43 Ellsworth, W.L. 2013. Injection-induced earthquakes. *Science* 341(6142). July 12, 2013. doi:
44 10.1126/science.1225942.

1
2 McNamara, D.E., H.M. Benz, R.B. Hermann, E.A. Bergman, P. Earle, A. Holland, R. Baldwin,
3 and A. Gassner. 2015. Earthquake hypocenters and focal mechanisms in central Oklahoma
4 reveal a complex system of reactivated subsurface strike-slip faulting. *Geophysical Research*
5 *Letters* 42(8), p. 2742-2749. doi: 10.1002/2014GL062730.

6
7 Weingartner, M., S. Ge, J.W., Godt, B.A. Bekins, and J.L. Rubinstein. 2015. High-rate injection
8 is associated with the increase in U.S. mid-continent seismicity. *Science* 348(6241), p. 1336-
9 1340. June 19, 2015. doi: 10.1126/science.aab1345

10
11 Yeck, W.L., L.V. Block, C.K. Wood, and V.M. King. 2015. Maximum magnitude estimations of
12 induced earthquakes at Paradox Valley, Colorado, from cumulative injection volume and
13 geometry of seismicity clusters. *Geophys. J. Int.* 200(1), p. 322–336. January 2015. doi:
14 10.1093/gji/ggu394.

15 16 References on Energy in Treatment Plants

17
18 McGucken, R., J. Oppenheimer, M. Badruzzaman, and J. Jacangelo. 2013. Toolbox for Water
19 utility Energy and Greenhouse Gas Emission Management. Sponsored by the Water Research
20 Foundation, Global Water Research Coalition, and NYSERDA. *Water Resource Foundation*.
21 Denver, Colorado.

22
23 U.S. EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2013. Energy Efficiency in Water and
24 Wastewater Facilities: A Guide to Developing and Implementing Greenhouse Gas Reduction
25 Programs, EPA-430-R-09-038.
26 <http://www3.epa.gov/statelocalclimate/documents/pdf/wastewater-guide.pdf>

27 28 Bromide occurrence based resources

29
30 Amy, G., M. Siddiqui, W. Zhai, J. DeBroux, and W. Odem. 1994. American Water Works
31 Association Research Foundation (AwwaRF) Final Report - Survey on bromide in drinking
water and impacts on DBP formation. American Water Works Association Research Foundation.

32 Additional resources

33
34 Jackson, R.B., E.R. Lowry, A. Pickle, M. Knag, D. DiGiulio, and K. Zhao. 2015. The depths of
35 hydraulic fracturing and accompanying water use across the United States. *Environ. Sci.*
36 *Technol.* 49(15), p. 8969-8976. doi: 10.1021/acs.est.5b01228.

37
38 Rice, J., S. Via, and P. Westerhoff. 2015. Extent and Impacts of Unplanned Wastewater Reuse in
39 U.S. Rivers. *Journal American Water Works Association*, 107, p.11:93 In Press. doi:
40 10.5942/jawwa.2015.107.0178.

41
42 Rice, J. and P. Westerhoff. 2015. Spatial and Temporal Variation in De Facto Wastewater Reuse
43 in Drinking Water Systems across the USA. *Environ. Sci. & Tech.* 49(2), p. 982-989. January 20,
44 2015. doi: 10.1021/es5048057.

1
2
3
4

Thorp, L.W., and J. Noël. 2015. Aquifer Exemptions: Program Overview and Emerging Concerns. *Journal of the American Water Works Association* 107(9), p. 53-59. September 2015. doi: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5942/jawwa.2015.107.0138>.

1 **3.7. Chemicals Used or Present in Hydraulic Fracturing Fluids**

2 *Question 7: The assessment used available information and data to identify chemicals used in hydraulic*
3 *fracturing fluids and/or present in flowback and produced waters. Known physicochemical and*
4 *toxicological properties of those chemicals were compiled and summarized. This is addressed in*
5 *Chapter 9.*

- 6 a. *Does the assessment present a clear and accurate characterization of the available chemical*
7 *and toxicological information concerning chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing?*
8 b. *Does the assessment clearly identify and describe the constituents of concern that potentially*
9 *impact drinking water resources?*
10 c. *Are the major findings fully supported by the information and data presented in the*
11 *assessment? Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the*
12 *factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and*
13 *fully supported?*
14 d. *Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical and toxicological*
15 *properties fully and clearly described?*
16 e. *What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps*
17 *should be assessed, to better characterize chemical and toxicological information in this*
18 *assessment? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section*
19 *of the report?*

20 Chapter 9 discusses the identification and hazard evaluation of chemicals used and encountered across
21 the HFWC. The chapter describes chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing fluids, chemicals detected in
22 flowback and produced water, toxicological and physicochemical properties of hydraulic fracturing
23 chemicals, the selection of toxicity values including reference values and oral slope factors, and
24 physicochemical properties of such chemicals, and provides a summary of additional sources of toxicity
25 information. The chapter discusses hazard identification of reported hydraulic fracturing chemicals,
26 including how chemicals were selected for hazard identification, a multi-criteria decision analysis
27 framework for hazard evaluation, and a summary of chemicals detected in multiple stages of the HFWC.
28 The chapter concludes with a synthesis of major findings, discussion of factors affecting the frequency
29 or severity of impacts, and description of uncertainties.

30 **3.7.1. Summary of Available Information on Hydraulic Fracturing Chemicals**

- 31 a. *Does the assessment present a clear and accurate characterization of the available chemical and*
32 *toxicological information concerning chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing?*
33

34
35 In the draft Assessment Report the EPA clearly articulates their approach for characterizing the available
36 chemical and toxicological information, including listing several sources for toxicological data in
37 Appendix G that did not meet their criteria. The assessment in Chapter 9 does a good job as a first
38 attempt to assess a very large and complex situation on a nationwide basis and introduce an approach
39 that integrates toxicology data with physicochemical properties.
40

41 The EPA developed a multi-criteria decision analysis (MCDA) approach to analyze hydraulic fracturing
42 chemicals for those which may be of most concern. The SAB agrees that inclusion of both exposure and
43 toxicity data are of paramount importance in such an approach. Physicochemical properties of chemicals
44 (mobility in water, volatility, and persistence) were included as surrogates of exposure in the approach

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

1 developed by the EPA. A significant limitation of the EPA’s approach was that criteria for
2 physicochemical data and toxicological data were applied inconsistently, which resulted in
3 underutilization of much relevant available information and did not recommend inclusion of exposure or
4 concentration data when available.

5
6 The toxicological information was not characterized in Chapter 9 of the draft Assessment Report in an
7 “inclusive” manner, because the criteria applied for data acceptability were too restrictive (discussed in
8 greater detail under Charge Question 7c). While the SAB agrees with the EPA’s inclusion of several
9 important sources for reference values listed in Section 9.3.1 and Appendix G (e.g., IRIS,³ HHBP,⁴
10 PPRTVs,⁵ Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry (ATSDR) Minimal Risk Levels (MRLs),⁶
11 California EPA Toxicity Criteria Database, IPCS CICAD,⁷ IARC,⁸ NTP RoC⁹), the SAB does not agree
12 that the EPA should limit toxicology information to reference values (RfV) or oral slope factors (OSFs)
13 that were peer reviewed only by a governmental or intergovernmental source. By doing so, the EPA
14 ignored available toxicology data that may be acceptable for risk assessment, including sources listed in
15 Appendix G.1.2 that the EPA excluded. Thus, the EPA’s estimate that toxicity data were unavailable for
16 87% of the 1,173 chemicals is an overstatement of the scope of the problem. At a minimum, the EPA
17 should explicitly indicate what fraction of the identified chemicals have hazard/toxicity information if
18 reliable sources from states, other federal agencies, and international bodies would be employed, even if
19 those sources do not meet the very stringent criteria used for MCDA analysis. It would be very useful
20 for stakeholders to have this information and references available. As part of this effort, the EPA should
21 reference and discuss the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) (2014)
22 hydraulic fracturing scoping project which identified 1121 “unique” hydraulic fracturing chemicals
23 based on input from OECD member countries including the U.S. The SAB reviewed the OECD
24 summary document but did not have access to the databases and spreadsheets that were referenced. The
25 SAB agrees with the broader inclusion of toxicological data outlined in the OECD summary. This
26 OECD project concluded that “*a large majority of substances were likely to have data available that*
27 *would allow basic hazard assessment*” based on an initial survey of the EU REACH registration
28 database, the EU classification and labelling inventory, and titles of citations in the literature” (OECD,
29 2014).

30
31 The EPA also briefly described the ACToR¹⁰ database as another potential source of toxicology
32 information in Section 9.3.4.2 of the draft Assessment Report, but did not include this data set in the
33 MCDA approach or Appendix A-2 listing of toxicological information. The EPA reported that taking all
34 assays related to oral toxicity together, ACToR had data available on 1145 of the 1173 hydraulic
35 fracturing chemicals, but that only 55% of chemicals had “relevant” oral toxicity data. The EPA should
36 clarify the definition of “relevant” and should broaden this definition to include short-term or chronic
37 oral toxicity studies considered acceptable for risk assessment purposes. The EPA should explicitly state
38 the total number of chemicals for which in vivo toxicology data are available in ACToR, OECD, EU,
39 and other databases excluded by the EPA, and should incorporate this information into the MCDA

³ Integrated Risk Information System, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

⁴ Human health benchmarks for pesticides, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

⁵ Provisional peer-reviewed toxicity values, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

⁶ ATSDR Minimum risk levels

⁷ International Programme on Chemical Safety Concise International Chemical Assessment Documents

⁸ International Agency for Research on Cancer

⁹ National Toxicology Program Report on Carcinogens, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services

¹⁰ Aggregated Computational Toxicology Resource, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

1 approach and add this information to Appendix A-2. As discussed in the SAB’s response to Charge
2 Question 7e, in cases where no in vivo data are available, the EPA is encouraged to consider emerging
3 high-throughput computational approaches, which are included in the ToxCast database and also
4 searchable in the ACToR database.

5
6 The draft Assessment Report also fails to note or make clear that some of the identified chemicals
7 without reported toxicity information are (a) food additives, dietary supplements or, by FDA criteria are
8 generally recognized as safe (GRAS) at specified levels with known human safety profiles
9 (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/IngredientsPackagingLabeling/GRAS/>); or (b) are chemically related forms
10 of the same substance, for which it would be reasonable to attribute similar safety profiles within the
11 quartiles of toxicity used in the evaluation. In fact, the problem of availability of toxicological
12 information for many chemicals is not unique to hydraulic fracturing, and the EPA should consider
13 developing a tiered approach for toxicological information, including read-across methods of grouping
14 chemicals of similar structure (<http://echa.europa.eu/support/grouping-of-substances-and-read-across>)
15 [European Centre for Ecotoxicology and Toxicology of Chemicals (Ecetox) Technical Report 116].

16
17 A more important limitation of the EPA’s hazard characterization is that very little attention is paid to
18 the initial problem formulation stage of risk assessment, as recommended by NAS (2008). This initial
19 problem formulation step should be used to identify the most likely potential hazards of greatest
20 concern, and then this should be used to guide what toxicological information is most relevant. Instead,
21 the EPA focuses exclusively on identifying formal noncancer oral reference values (RfVs) and cancer
22 oral slope factors (OSFs) for chemicals, without providing sufficient rationale for frequency, duration, or
23 intensity of exposure. Potential hazards that were highlighted in previous chapters and are of public
24 concern were not addressed adequately in this chapter (e.g., flammability of methane gas in Chapter 6,
25 and possible disinfection by-products [DBPs] in Chapter 8). Furthermore, if the most likely exposures of
26 concern are findings in shorter term exposures, then findings in shorter term toxicology studies that meet
27 OECD and Good Laboratory Practice (GLP) guidelines (e.g., OECD screening information data set)
28 could be just as relevant as chronic studies. The ATSDR publishes acute, intermediate, and chronic
29 ATSDR MRLs for many chemicals. American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists
30 (ACGIH) threshold limit values (TLVs) and National Research Council’s acute exposure guideline
31 levels (<http://dels.nas.edu/global/best/AEGL-Reports>) pertain to inhalation exposures, which may be
32 pertinent to some drinking water exposure scenarios. The EPA should characterize toxicological
33 information on chemicals employed in hydraulic fracturing in an inclusive manner, and not restrict the
34 criterion for selection of hydraulic fracturing chemicals of concern to those that have formal noncancer
35 oral reference values (RfVs) and cancer oral slope factors (OSFs) for those chemicals.

36
37 In contrast to the toxicology information, the EPA uses chemical databases that are not peer reviewed
38 for physicochemical parameters. The EPA uses the frequency of reporting in FracFocus, and K_{ow} values
39 calculated from EPI Suite KowWIN software, to develop lists of chemicals of interest (Section 9.4.1)
40 and characterize “exposure” (Section 9.5.2). The SAB agrees with the EPA’s general approach to use
41 available data to estimate exposure for MCDA assessments. However, more rigorous discussion of the
42 limitations of these data is needed to estimate exposure in drinking water. Since the MCDA gives equal
43 weight to information on physicochemical scores, occurrence and toxicity, this may place undue
44 emphasis on physicochemical score. While useful in judging a chemical’s likelihood of occurrence in
45 drinking water, this value may be a relatively poor surrogate for actual exposure. Compounds may not
46 be addressed that tend to remain at their original deposition site and serve as a reservoir for prolonged
47 release. In light of these limitations, the agency should use MCDA results for preliminary evaluation

1 purposes only. The agency should use MCDA on a regional or site-specific basis where more complete
2 constituent identity, concentrations and toxicity information is available.

3
4 The EPA SAB had concerns about the selection of specific factors in the examples. The EPA describes
5 the limitations of the voluntary FracFocus database, but does not adequately justify their selection of
6 frequency of occurrence, instead of the median maximum concentration in hydraulic fluid, to estimate
7 the likelihood of exposure. A chemical could be used frequently but at very low concentrations in
8 hydraulic fracturing fluids, and therefore be of little concern toxicologically. The EPA should also
9 acknowledge that very potent chemicals can be present but maybe only at specific sites. Considerations
10 of these situations should also be included in the explicit problem formulations. The EPA should also
11 recognize the concerns regarding its reliance on FracFocus data.

12
13 The SAB recommends that the EPA should use experimental K_{ow} values when available, and discuss the
14 reliability of the EPI Suite KowWIN software to estimate K_{ow} for the structures and range of values
15 estimated. ACToR and REACH are potential sources of experimental K_{ow} and other physicochemical
16 values that the EPA should use. In addition, the EPA should discuss the chemical information within the
17 context of the HFWC, to describe differences in chemical characteristics, such as mobility when the
18 chemical spills as a solvent (100% concentration), and after it is diluted to much lower concentrations in
19 hydraulic fracturing fluid, flowback, or produced water.

20 **3.7.2. HF Constituents of Concern**

21
22 *b. Does the assessment clearly identify and describe the constituents of concern that potentially impact*
23 *drinking water resources?*

24
25 EPA clearly identifies and describes 1,076 chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing fluids (Appendix A-
26 2), and 134 chemicals reported in flowback and produced water (Appendix A-4). The EPA should be
27 commended for being very clear and transparent in Appendix A about the sources of information on
28 which they relied for each chemical listed. These lists provides a valuable starting point for further
29 refinement and updates. The SAB encourages the EPA to reconcile their lists of chemicals with the
30 international OECD (2014) list of chemicals as a further check of potential chemicals of interest,
31 although the SAB recognizes that there are differences in regulations and practices between the EU and
32 U.S.

33
34 In addition, Chapter 9 of the draft Assessment Report notes that 70% of disclosures contain at least one
35 CBI chemical. The SAB recommends that the EPA bring forward information and approaches from
36 Chapter 5 to clarify that 11% of all hydraulic fracturing chemicals were CBI and characterize the
37 toxicological properties of CBI chemicals that were provided to USEPA by nine service companies
38 (discussed further under the SAB response to Charge Question 7e).

39
40 EPA indicates that there is a paucity of information on chemical identity and concentrations in flowback
41 and produced water, with only three references cited in Table A-4. Previous chapters suggest numerous
42 pathways for impacting drinking water but does not indicate which of them are most likely to exist.
43 Absent such directional information, it is not feasible to conclude which constituents—each differing in
44 occurrence, concentration, and volume during the various phases of hydraulic fracturing gas and oil
45 extraction—are of greatest concern. Additional field studies should be given a high priority in order to

1 better understand the intensity and duration of exposures to constituents of flowback and produced water
2 (discussed further under the SAB response to Charge Question 7e).

3
4 In the absence of exposure information, the multi-criteria decision analysis (MCDA) approach presented
5 by the EPA is a commendable and reasonable conceptual approach to prioritize chemicals of concern,
6 but not as the EPA prescribed it for a national level. The EPA clearly states that the approach is
7 described for illustrative purposes, in order to demonstrate how combining toxicological and
8 physicochemical information may be informative. The EPA SAB supports an approach that considers
9 both hazard and exposure potential. However, due to the limitations described above and in the SAB’s
10 response to Charge Question 7a, the EPA’s MCDA results should be considered for preliminary hazard
11 evaluation purposes only, as the EPA originally intended. MCDA approach presented is useful on a
12 regional or site-specific basis when more adequate toxicological data (i.e., not based solely on RfD) and
13 constituent information (e.g., concentration and volume of spill) is available. In light of these
14 limitations, and given that the EPA applied this approach to only 37 chemicals used in hydraulic
15 fracturing fluids and 23 chemicals detected in flowback or produced water, the EPA should explicitly
16 state that these MCDA results should not be used for prioritization of chemicals of most concern
17 nationally nor to direct future toxicity testing research needs.

18
19 EPA’s MCDA results give equal weight to physicochemical score (water solubility, volatility, and
20 persistence in water) as to occurrence (concentration) and toxicity. The SAB is concerned that this may
21 place undue emphasis on the physicochemical scores, which may be a relatively poor surrogate for
22 exposure. While the SAB agrees that the three physicochemical sub-factors (water solubility, volatility,
23 persistence) are useful to judge the chemical’s likelihood of higher concentrations in drinking water, this
24 approach may not adequately address compounds that tend to remain at their original site of deposition
25 and serve as potential reservoirs for sustained/prolonged low level release into drinking water. The EPA
26 discussed this uncertainty in Section 9.6.3 (last paragraph on page 9-8). However, the EPA should
27 clearly emphasize that local exposure data on concentration and volume of spilled liquids should take
28 priority over these physicochemical score surrogate measures and/or consider different weights for the
29 physicochemical scores compared to concentration and toxicity data. In addition, structure activity
30 databases and approaches may provide additional information relevant for estimating physicochemical
31 properties (references listed in the SAB’s response to Charge Question 7e).

32 **3.7.3. Major Findings**

33
34 *c1. Are the major findings fully supported by the information and data presented in the assessment?*

35
36 The SAB has concerns regarding three of the major findings included in Chapter 9, as follows.

- 37
38 1. The EPA concludes, “Agencies may use these [MCDA] results to prioritize chemicals for hazard
39 assessment or for determining future research priorities” (page 9-39 of the draft Assessment
40 Report). The SAB disagrees with this finding, based on the current method and limited scope of
41 the MCDA exercise. The incomplete characterization of the available toxicological information
42 in Chapter 9 could misdirect policy makers to close inaccurately perceived hazard information
43 gaps. The lack of clarity or exclusion of such information inflates the “unknown” hazard
44 information, rather than making clear that there is a substantial body of unused hazard
45 information. The draft Assessment Report should explicitly indicate what fraction of the
46 compounds identified in hydraulic fracturing fluid and/or produced waters have some hazard

1 information (e.g., any governmental reviewed toxicity data used for risk assessment), and what
2 fraction have no available information. The EPA should also provide information on
3 toxicological properties of CBI chemicals based on the voluntary disclosures to the EPA.
4

- 5 2. The EPA describes a list of potential hazards associated with chemicals in multiple places in
6 Chapter 9: “*Potential hazards associated with these chemicals include carcinogenesis, immune*
7 *system effects, changes in body weight, changes in blood chemistry, cardiotoxicity, neurotoxicity,*
8 *liver and kidney toxicity, and reproductive and developmental toxicity.*” In its present form, this
9 statement does not take into account factors that affect the frequency, duration, or severity of
10 exposure. This major finding should be qualified with “depending on the level and duration of
11 exposure” at the end of each of these sentences throughout Chapter 9 and other parts of the
12 document. In addition, the EPA should include in Chapter 9 the paragraph found in the
13 Executive Summary and Synthesis Chapters 10-8 line 13-20, which clarifies that hazards, and
14 thus impact on water quality, depend on magnitude of exposure, and that this is best evaluated in
15 site-specific assessments at the regional, local, or well level.
16
- 17 3. The EPA’s major conclusion is that there is a significant data gap with regard to hazard
18 identification, making it challenging to understand the toxicity and potential health impacts of
19 the large majority of chemicals. As discussed in the SAB’s response to Charge Question 7a, this
20 conclusion is not fully supported because the EPA did not use all reasonably qualified
21 toxicological information and approaches (e.g., did not use all U.S. and EU government-based
22 toxicity data and safety assessments, nor accepted read-across approaches for highly similar
23 compounds).
24

25 *c2. Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward?*
26

27 In Chapter 9 of the draft Assessment Report the EPA should summarize from previous chapters the
28 discussions of potential hazards from methane (physical hazard), bromide-related disinfection by-
29 products formed in drinking water, and organics in hydraulic fracturing wastewater. Information about
30 exposure levels when available and regulatory action levels should be included to provide context for
31 these constituents as well as the naturally occurring radioactive materials.

32 The EPA should use the full body of toxicology information, consistent with the agency’s usual
33 approach in hazard assessment. A criterion for acceptable toxicology data should be scientific and
34 regulatory guideline quality, rather than funding source and formal assessments of chronic reference
35 doses (RfDs). The EPA should take full advantage of the available peer-reviewed hazard assessments
36 that were excluded in Section G.1.2 of the draft Assessment Report, as well as other sources of
37 toxicological information. The SAB lists these additional sources below in the response to Charge
38 Question 7e. At a minimum, the EPA should include all state and federal government hazard
39 assessments in its analysis. This is particularly appropriate, because the EPA concludes that hazards are
40 best assessed on a local level. The European Chemicals Agency Website for Registration, Evaluation
41 Authorization Restriction of Chemicals (REACH/ECHA) is a database for toxicology and
42 physicochemical data that may be useful for a large spectrum of chemicals. The EPA excluded MCLs
43 because they are treatment based (page 9-6), but the EPA could consider MCLs or MCLGs when
44 prioritizing concern levels using the proposed MCDA approach. As the EPA broadens inclusion of
45 toxicology information to populate missing toxicity data, they can develop a more expanded version of
46 the tiered hierarchy of toxicity values described in Section 9.3.1. This allows the EPA to give higher

1 priority to RfVs without excluding other toxicology information that is useful for risk assessment
2 purposes.

3 The problem of availability of toxicology data for chemicals is not unique to hydraulic fracturing, so the
4 EPA might consider approaches used for toxicological data evaluation by the EPA and other regulatory
5 agencies, such as read-across and GRAS (generally recognized as safe) for some of the substances
6 (<http://www.fda.gov/Food/IngredientsPackagingLabeling/GRAS/>).

7 EPA should also directly consider and include exposure, use of threshold-of-toxicological-concern
8 concepts, and use of best practices for mitigation of hazards identified in the course of the analysis (e.g.,
9 recent information from FracFocus 3 and other sources on trends in substitution of less hazardous
10 chemicals, as well as containment practices), should be addressed to the extent feasible or be noted as
11 gaps in the draft Assessment Report. The fact that substantially more information is available on many
12 of the chemicals than was used in the draft Assessment Report needs to be brought forward to the
13 conclusions of Chapter 9 in Section 9.6.4 and the Executive Summary.

14 **3.7.4. Frequency or Severity of Impacts**

15
16 *c3. Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and*
17 *fully supported?*

18
19 There appears to be minimal emphasis on and discussion of factors that influence the frequency or
20 severity of potential impacts. For example, while there is some information on hydraulic fracturing
21 fluids used in various volumes and storage containers, as well as some mention of variations in
22 secondary containment, there is no discussion of how these factors could influence spill conditions,
23 aside from noting container failure as a substantial contribution to spills. Likewise, while there is
24 discussion of well failures as a potential impact on drinking water resources, there is limited discussion
25 of the likelihood of failure at different production stages (e.g., well communication failures,
26 overpressuring failures, and structural failures during operation) and the type of chemical constituents
27 that would be released. Each of these elements (and numerous others) is discussed in the draft
28 Assessment Report, but there is limited synthesis of how this may affect the severity of impacts on
29 drinking water resources.

30 **3.7.5. Uncertainties, Assumptions and Limitations**

31
32 *d. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical and toxicological properties*
33 *fully and clearly described?*

34
35 The EPA clearly states in the Chapter 9 the relevant uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations. Further,
36 the SAB notes areas of disagreement with some of the assumptions, limitations, and uncertainties
37 presented within the draft Assessment Report.

38
39 A major assumption was that chronic toxicity data should be the basis for identifying chemicals of
40 potential concern. It is not likely, based on the nature of the exposures (for example, local surface spills),
41 that all exposures or impacts will be chronic. Data provided in some of the cases where measurements
42 were made point to transient, rather than chronic, exposure durations. This assumption, while perhaps a

1 useful simplification, should be explicitly indicated as resulting in some data gaps and overestimates of
2 some impacts (e.g., those noted to yield transient exposures).

3
4 A major uncertainty is whether the list of chemicals used for hydraulic fracturing (Table A-2), based on
5 references listed in Table A-1, is representative of current hydraulic fracturing practices. This could be
6 better characterized by comparing chemicals listed in FracFocus 1 with those in FracFocus 3 to help
7 assess whether the hydraulic fracturing industry is changing chemicals used within the HFWC, and
8 whether there is movement in the U.S. toward “greener” chemistry. While this use of the FracFocus
9 database may provide useful information, the SAB expresses concern that the FracFocus database may
10 not be complete because it is voluntary and does not include some important information because of its
11 proprietary nature, and lacks information on the identity, properties, frequency of use, magnitude of
12 exposure, and toxicity potential of a substantial number of chemicals. The agency should acknowledge
13 that there is limited information on what is being injected, and should describe these concerns regarding
14 its reliance on FracFocus data within the draft Assessment Report. Within the draft Assessment Report,
15 the agency should also characterize data on proprietary compounds that the EPA may have, and
16 information provided in FracFocus on chemical class and concentration (% mass of hydraulic fracturing
17 fluid).

18 **3.7.6. Additional Information, Background or Context to be Added**

19
20 *e1. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should be*
21 *assessed, to better characterize chemical and toxicological information in this assessment?*
22

23 As discussed in the SAB’s response to Question 7a, very little attention is paid to the initial problem
24 formulation stage of risk assessment, as recommended by NAS (2008). The EPA should carry forward
25 to this chapter discussion of the most likely pathways for impacting drinking water resources based on
26 consideration of case studies, retrospective studies, and/or scenarios for private well and downstream
27 surface water municipal water treatment plants that were discussed in previous chapters. When
28 discussing the most likely scenarios for spills or leaks through the HFWC, it would be useful to provide
29 background and context on best practices and existing federal and state regulations that govern spills and
30 leaks that could be employed to further mitigate potential for exposure. Resumption of local case studies
31 or initiation of the originally planned prospective studies described in the research Study Plan (U.S.
32 EPA, 2011) could provide better understanding of exposure to constituents based on actual scenarios,
33 provided that adequate baseline data exist. Such data could also be used to “validate” the MCDA
34 approach by comparing the MCDA results using actual exposure data with results based on use of the
35 physicochemical properties in the MCDA equations (i.e., occurrence and K_{ow}).

36
37 Additional field studies should be given a high priority, in order to develop a much more comprehensive
38 chemical exposure database. It is acknowledged in several places in the document that chemical hazard
39 evaluation should be most useful to conduct on a regional or site-specific basis. It is essential to have
40 more extensive and reliable information on the intensity and duration of human exposures to determine
41 whether hydraulic fracturing activities in different locales pose health risks. Therefore it is important to
42 bring forward and synthesize the key information from case studies, retrospective studies, and/or
43 scenarios for private well and downstream surface water municipal water treatment plants that were
44 discussed in previous chapters.
45

1 As discussed in the SAB’s response to Charge Questions 7a and 7c, the EPA should use the full body of
2 toxicology information, consistent with the agency’s usual approach for hazard evaluation. A criterion
3 for acceptable toxicology data should be scientific and regulatory guideline quality, rather than funding
4 source and formal assessments of chronic RfDs. The EPA should include all state and federal
5 government hazard assessments, as well as peer-reviewed hazard assessments (especially those
6 following the EPA’s approach for peer review), and MCLs or MCLGs in its analysis. Shorter term and
7 chronic toxicology studies that meet OECD and GLP guidelines (e.g., OECD screening information data
8 set) are relevant hazard data that should be included even if a formal chronic RfD has not been
9 established. The EPA should reference and utilize the OECD (2014) initial survey and spreadsheets that
10 identify chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing with potential hazard data based on EU REACH, EU
11 Classification and Labeling inventory, and publications. Similarly, the EPA should utilize ACToR to
12 search for relevant oral short-term and chronic studies. Potential hazards that were highlighted in
13 previous chapters and are of public concern should also be added to Chapter 9 (e.g., flammability of
14 methane gas in Chapter 6, and potential disinfection by-products [DBPs] in drinking water treatment
15 plants in Chapter 8).

16
17 There is a gap in knowledge of chemicals that are designated as confidential business information (CBI).
18 The chemical and toxicological information for CBI chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing activities
19 should be better characterized using data that the EPA may have and/or information provided in
20 FracFocus regarding chemical class and concentration (% mass of the hydraulic fracturing fluid). The
21 EPA should indicate in Chapter 9 that 11% of all ingredients reported in FracFocus were CBI (page 5-73
22 line 28). The EPA should also recognize the concerns regarding its reliance on FracFocus data. The EPA
23 can provide aggregate information on potential hazards posed by CBI chemicals without publically
24 disclosing specific information. The EPA can characterize the toxicological and MCDA results in a
25 manner similar to the approach used for known chemicals. This would enable an assessment of the
26 potential for significant impact (or not) from CBI chemicals relative to known chemicals.

27
28 The EPA should carefully distinguish between hydraulic fracturing chemicals injected into a hydraulic
29 fracturing well vs. chemicals and hydrocarbons that come back out of the hydraulic fracturing well in
30 produced fluids. The SAB suggests that if no chemicals are added to a hydraulic fracturing well, there is
31 still a potential for impacts to drinking water resources from compounds present naturally in the
32 subsurface and present in produced water. In Chapter 9 and throughout the draft Assessment Report,
33 chemical constituents and potential impacts unique to hydraulic fracturing oil and gas extraction should
34 be clearly distinguished from those that also exist as a component of conventional oil and gas
35 development. This is not to say that the ones that overlap both production methods should not be
36 included, but rather that the ones that may cause unique potential impacts from the specific methods of
37 hydraulic fracturing production should be highlighted. For example, it is not clear from this chapter of
38 the draft Assessment Report to what extent hydraulic fracturing produced water—through its chemical
39 constituents—poses significant, unique potential impacts to drinking water resources (other than over
40 the first few days when flowback water contains hydraulic fracturing fluid constituents). As such, the
41 agency should clarify whether compounds identified as being of most concern in produced water are
42 products of the hydraulic fracturing activity, flowback, or late-stage produced water, or are chemicals of
43 concern derived from oil and gas production activities that are unrelated to hydraulic fracturing activity.

44

1 *e2. Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?*

2 As stated in the SAB's response to Charge Question 7a, the SAB supports use of the sources of
3 toxicological information that the EPA included. However, several additional sources were excluded or
4 not mentioned by the EPA and should be included; these are listed below. Many of these sources of
5 relevant in vivo toxicology data were mentioned in the SAB's response to previous the EPA Charge
6 Questions 7a–d and are listed below. In addition, while the draft Assessment Report briefly described
7 the ACToR database in Chapter 9, the agency should fully utilize the in vivo toxicology and
8 physicochemical data available through ACToR, including acute, short-term, and chronic toxicity data,
9 data on corrosivity, and experimental physicochemical data. The physicochemical data (e.g., K_{ow}) are
10 not only useful for predicting toxicant fate and transport in drinking water resources, but also can
11 contribute toward evaluating the ability of a compound to cross cell membranes, which is relevant for
12 predicting toxicity.

13 When no in vivo data are available, the EPA is encouraged to consider emerging high-throughput
14 screening approaches that also incorporate estimates of external doses (Wambaugh et al. 2013; Wetmore
15 et al. 2015). This approach is an advancement in the use of high-throughput screening data to prioritize
16 the use of oil spill dispersants (Judson et al. 2010). Despite limitations of the Judson et al. (2010)
17 approach, this paper illustrates a use of emerging approaches to address risk management needs when
18 in-vivo toxicology data are not available. The EPA should review the in vivo data sets and
19 computational results available through ACToR and specifically state which compounds have relevant
20 in vivo data that can be used for risk assessment purposes despite not achieving the EPA's strict
21 inclusion criteria used in the draft Assessment Report. The SAB recommends that the EPA, also specify
22 where emerging high-throughput test data are available within the ToxRef database as a result of the
23 EPA's computational toxicology research efforts.

24
25 List of sources of in vivo toxicological information:

26
27 State RfV values: the EPA collected all publicly available RfVs and/or OSFs from different states,
28 including Texas, but they only included the California EPA values because they were peer-reviewed
29 according to the EPA's definition (Appendix G). The EPA should use all state values, especially
30 because the EPA encourages risk assessments at the local level. The EPA can choose to give lower
31 priority to state values that are not peer reviewed in their tiered hierarchical priority scheme, but should
32 not exclude these values as toxicological information.

33
34 ACToR: the EPA discussed ACToR but did not include available in vivo toxicology data if they did not
35 meet the EPA's narrow definition of acceptable toxicology information. Thus, toxicology studies
36 reviewed by the EPA that are used to compare with high-throughput in silico data were not included.
37 The EPA should use the experimental physicochemical and in vivo toxicology database available
38 through ACToR. In addition, ACToR provides links to other databases, including tools for using
39 structure activity to predict toxicity.

40
41 National Library of Medicine (NLM). The National Library of Medicine (NLM) has a comprehensive
42 website, the Toxicology and Environmental Health Information Program: (TEHIP;
43 <https://www.nlm.nih.gov/pubs/factsheets/tehipfs.html>). This website provides “one-stop shopping” for
44 toxicant information that is available free to the public. It provides resources from the NLM and from
45 other agencies/organizations. Included in this is the NLM's TOXNET database, which has integrated all

1 of the free toxicology and environmental health databases available (see Appendix 1 for list). The SAB
2 strongly encourages the EPA to discuss what toxicity information is useful from this database. European
3 Chemicals Agency Registration, Evaluation Authorization Restriction of Chemicals (REACH)
4 Information on Chemicals. <http://echa.europa.eu/information-on-chemicals>. Includes physicochemical
5 and toxicological data for chemicals registered under REACH. As of September 2015 it provided data
6 for 13441 unique substances and contains information from 51920 Dossiers.

7
8 U.S. FDA Generally Recognized as Safe (GRAS)

9 <http://www.fda.gov/Food/IngredientsPackagingLabeling/GRAS> List of chemicals found in food that are
10 considered by FDA as generally recognized as safe (GRAS) either through scientific procedures or, for a
11 substance used in food before 1958, through experience based on common use in food.

12
13 American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH) Threshold Limit Values
14 (TLV's). <http://www.acgih.org/tlv-bei-guidelines/policies-procedures-presentations/overview>. The EPA
15 excluded these assessments because they are specific to workers and not generalizable to the general
16 public and because it is not a governmental or intergovernmental body. Rather than ignore these values
17 completely, the EPA should consider these assessments as valuable sources of peer reviewed
18 toxicological values that can be adapted for drinking water risk assessment needs when other RfVs are
19 unavailable.

20
21 Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD). 2014. Provision of knowledge and
22 information - chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing. *52nd Joint Meeting of the Chemicals Committee*
23 *and the Working Part on Chemicals, Pesticides and Biotechnology*. ENV/JM(2014)25. For presentation
24 at November 4-6, 2014 Meeting, Paris, France. September 19, 2014. The report provides data to support
25 their conclusion that a large majority of substances used in hydraulic fracturing are likely to have data
26 available that would allow basic hazard assessment. This report includes “factsheets” for each
27 responding country including the U.S., one spreadsheet that identifies chemicals and elucidates hazard
28 data availability and a second that contains (limited) information on commercial products in which
29 chemicals were found, concentrations of chemicals in commercial products, typical concentrations of
30 chemicals and product in hydraulic fracturing fluids.

31
32 Toxicology Excellence for Risk Assessment International Toxicity Estimates for Risk Assessment
33 <http://www.tera.org/iter/>. *ITER* (International Toxicity Estimates of Risk) is a free Internet database of
34 human health risk values for over 680 chemicals of environmental concern from several government
35 organizations worldwide (e.g. ATSDR, Health Canada, U.S. The EPA, RIVM.)

36
37 Toxicology Excellence for Risk Assessment Voluntary Children's Chemical Evaluation Program Peer
38 Consultations. <http://www.tera.org/Peer/VCCEP/index.html>. The VCCEP pilot program uses a tiered
39 testing approach to assessing need of data for risk assessment purposes. For toxicity data, specific types
40 of studies have been assigned to one of three tiers. For exposure data, the depth of exposure information
41 increases with each tier. These data and the proposes risk assessments are reviewed based on procedures
42 in accordance with the U.S. Office of Management and Budget, the National Academy of Sciences, and
43 the U.S. The EPA.

44
45 European Chemicals Agency Grouping of substances and read-across

46 <http://echa.europa.eu/support/grouping-of-substances-and-read-across>. Provides general guidance and
47 examples of how to group substances based on the read-across approach.

1
2 European Centre for Ecotoxicology and Toxicology of Chemicals (2012). Category approaches, Read-
3 across, (Q)SAR. Technical Report 116). Provides state-of-the art practical read-across strategies in
4 applying non-testing approaches for regulatory purposes.

5
6 Additional relevant literature:

7
8 The SAB recommends that the EPA consider the following additional literature sources within this
9 chapter of the draft Assessment Report:

10
11 Judson RS, Martin MT, Reif DM, Houck KA, Knudsen TB, Rotroff DM, Xia M, Sakamuru S, Huang R,
12 Shinn P, Austin CP, Kavlock RJ and Dix DJ. 2010. Analysis of eight oil spill dispersants using rapid, in
13 vitro tests for endocrine and other biological activity. *Environ Sci Technol.* 44, p. 5979-5985.

14
15 National Academies Press. 2008. Science and Decisions: Advancing Risk Assessment. ISBN:0-309-
16 12047-0; <http://www.nap.edu/catalog/12209.html>.

17
18 Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD). 2014. Provision of knowledge and
19 information - chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing. *52nd Joint Meeting of the Chemicals Committee*
20 *and the Working Part on Chemicals, Pesticides and Biotechnology*. ENV/JM(2014)25. For presentation
21 at November 4-6, 2014 Meeting, Paris, France. September 19, 2014.

22
23 Wambaugh, J.F., R.W. Setzer, D.M. Reif, S. Gangwal, J. Mitchell-Blackwood, J.A. Arnot, O. Joliet, A.
24 Frame, J. Rabinowitz, T.B. Knudsen, R.S. Judson, P. Egeghy, D. Vallero, and E.A. Cohen Hubal. 2013.
25 High-throughput models for exposure-based chemical prioritization in the ExpoCast Project. *Environ Sci*
26 *Technol* 47(15), p. 8479-8488. August 6, 2013. doi: 10.1021/es400482g.

27
28 Wetmore, B.A., J.F. Wambaugh, B. Allen, S.S. Ferguson, M.A. Sochaski, R.W. Setzer, K.A. Houck,
29 C.L. Strobe, K. Cantwell, R.S. Judson, E. LeCluyse, H. Clewell, R.S. Thomas, and M.E. Andersen.
30 2015. Incorporating high-throughput exposure predictions with dosimetry adjusted in vitro bioactivity to
31 inform chemical toxicity testing. *Toxicol Sci.* 148(1), p. 121-36. November 2015. doi:
32 10.1093/toxsci/kfv171.

33
34 APPENDIX 1 The National Library of Medicine (NLM) Toxicology and Environmental Health
35 Information Program (TEHIP) Fact Sheet. <https://www.nlm.nih.gov/pubs/factsheets/tehipfs.html>

36 TEHIP maintains a comprehensive web site that provides access to resources produced by it and by
37 other government agencies and organizations. This web site includes links to databases, bibliographies,
38 tutorials, and other scientific and consumer-oriented resources. TEHIP also is responsible for the
39 Toxicology Data Network (TOXNET®), an integrated system of toxicology and environmental health
40 databases that are available free of charge on the web. TOXNET includes:

- 41 • HSDB® (Hazardous Substances Data Bank) provides data for over 5,000 hazardous chemicals.
42 HSDB has information on human exposure, industrial hygiene, emergency handling procedures,
43 environmental fate, regulatory requirements, nanomaterials, and related areas. The information in
44 HSDB has been assessed by a Scientific Review Panel.

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

- 1 • TOXLINE® has references to the biomedical literature on biochemical, pharmacological,
2 physiological, and toxicological effects of drugs and other chemicals. It contains over 4 million
3 citations, almost all with abstracts and/or index terms and CAS Registry Numbers.
4
- 5 • ChemIDplus® provides access to the structure and nomenclature authority files used for the
6 identification of chemical substances cited in NLM databases. The database contains more than
7 400,000 chemical records, of which over 300,000 include chemical structures.
8
- 9 • IRIS (Integrated Risk Information System) contains data in support of human health risk
10 assessment, including hazard identification and dose-response assessments. It is compiled by the
11 Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and contains descriptive and quantitative information
12 related to human cancer and non-cancer health effects that may result from exposure to
13 substances in the environment. IRIS data is reviewed by the EPA scientists and represents the
14 EPA consensus.
15
- 16 • ITER contains data in support of human health risk assessments. It is compiled by Toxicology
17 Excellence for Risk Assessment (TERA) and contains data from CDC/ATSDR, Health Canada,
18 RIVM, U.S. The EPA, IARC, NSF International and independent parties offering peer-reviewed
19 risk values. ITER provides comparison charts of international risk assessment information and
20 explains differences in risk values derived by different organizations.
21
- 22 • TRI (Toxics Release Inventory) is a set of publicly available databases containing information on
23 releases of specific toxic chemicals and their management as waste, as reported annually by U.S.
24 industrial and federal facilities to the EPA. There is information on over 650 chemicals and
25 chemical categories. Pollution prevention data is also reported by each facility for each chemical.
26
- 27 • CCRIS (Chemical Carcinogenesis Research Information System) is a factual data bank
28 developed by the National Cancer Institute. It contains evaluated data and information, derived
29 from both short and long-term bioassays on over 9,000 chemicals. Studies relate to carcinogens,
30 mutagens, tumor promoters, carcinogens, metabolites and inhibitors of carcinogens.
31
- 32 • GENE-TOX provides genetic toxicology (mutagenicity) test data from expert peer review of
33 open scientific literature for more than 3,000 chemicals from the EPA.
34
- 35 • DART® (Developmental and Reproductive Toxicology) provides biomedical journals references
36 covering teratology and other aspects of developmental and reproductive toxicology.
37
- 38 • LactMed (Drugs and Lactation Database) is a database of drugs and other chemicals to which
39 breastfeeding mothers may be exposed. It includes information on the levels of such substances
40 in breast milk and infant blood, and the possible adverse effects in the nursing infant.
41
- 42 • CPDB (Carcinogenic Potency Database) reports analyses of animal cancer tests used in support
43 of cancer risk assessments for human. It was developed by the Carcinogenic Potency Project at
44 the University of California, Berkeley and the Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory. It
45 includes 6,540 chronic, long-term animal cancer tests.
46

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

- 1 • CTD (Comparative Toxicogenomics Database) contains manually curated data describing cross-
2 species chemical-gene/protein interactions and chemical- and gene-disease relationships. CTD
3 was developed at North Carolina State University (NCSU).

4 In addition to TOXNET, other toxicology and environmental health-related web resources available
5 from TEHIP include:

- 6 • ALTBIB® provides access to PubMed®/MEDLINE® citations relevant to alternatives to the use
7 of live vertebrates in biomedical research and testing. Many citations provide access to free full
8 text.
9
- 10 • Dietary Supplement Label Database (DSLDD) is a joint project of the National Institutes of Health
11 (NIH) Office of Dietary Supplements (ODS) and the National Library of Medicine (NLM). The
12 DSLDD contains the full label contents from a sample of dietary supplement products marketed in
13 the U.S.
14
- 15 • Drug Information Portal is a gateway to selected drug information from the U.S. National
16 Library of Medicine and other key U.S. government agencies. It includes information on more
17 than 48,000 drugs from the time they are entered into clinical trials (Clinicaltrials.gov) through
18 their entry in the U.S. market place.
19
- 20 • Haz-Map® is an occupational health database designed for health and safety professionals and
21 for consumers seeking information about the adverse effects of workplace exposures to chemical
22 and biological agents. The main links in Haz-Map are between chemicals and occupational
23 diseases. These links have been established using current scientific evidence.
24
- 25 • Household Products Database links over 13,000 consumer brands to health effects from Material
26 Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) provided by manufacturers and allows scientists and consumers to
27 research products based on chemical ingredients.
28
- 29 • LiverTox provides up-to-date, comprehensive and unbiased information about drug induced liver
30 injury caused by prescription and nonprescription drugs, herbals and dietary supplements. It is a
31 joint effort of the Liver Disease Research Branch of the National Institute of Diabetes and
32 Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) and the Division of Specialized Information Services
33 of the National Library of Medicine (NLM).
34
- 35 • TOXMAP® is a web site from the National Library of Medicine (NLM) that uses maps of the
36 United States to show the amount and location of toxic chemicals released into the environment.
37 Data is derived from the EPA's Toxics Release Inventory (TRI), which provides information on
38 the releases of toxic chemicals into the environment as reported annually by industrial facilities
39 around the United States.
40
- 41 • ToxMystery is an interactive learning site helping children age 7 to 10 find clues about toxic
42 substances that can lurk in the home. ToxMystery provides a fun, game-like experience, while
43 teaching important lessons about potential environmental health hazards. ToxMystery is
44 available in English and Spanish.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

- Tox Town is an interactive guide to the connections between commonly encountered toxic substances, the environment, and the public's health. Tox Town is available in English and Spanish.

TEHIP is part of the Division of Specialized Information Services (SIS) which produces information resources covering toxicology, environmental health, outreach to underserved and special populations, HIV/AIDS, drugs and household products, and disaster/emergency preparedness and response.

1 **3.8. Synthesis of Science on Potential Impacts of Hydraulic Fracturing on Drinking Water**
2 **Resources, and Executive Summary**

3 *Question 8: The Executive Summary and Chapter 10 provide a synthesis of the information in this*
4 *assessment. In particular, the Executive Summary was written for a broad audience.*

- 5 a. *Are the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 clearly written and logically organized?*
6 b. *Does the Executive Summary clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the major findings*
7 *of the assessment for a broad audience, consistent with the body of the report?*
8 c. *In Chapter 10, have interrelationships and major findings for the major stages of the HFWC*
9 *been adequately explored and identified? Are there other major findings that have not been*
10 *brought forward?*
11 d. *Are there sections in Chapter 10 that should be expanded? Or additional information added?*

12 Chapter 10 provides a synthesis of the information in the draft hydraulic fracturing Assessment Report.
13 The chapter describes the major findings of each of the five HFWC stages: (1) water acquisition for
14 hydraulic fracturing fluids; (2) chemical mixing to form fracturing fluids; (3) well injection of fracturing
15 fluids; (4) flowback and produced water; and (5) wastewater treatment and disposal. It discusses key
16 data limitations and uncertainties, including limitations in monitoring data and chemical information. It
17 also presents conclusions and uses for the draft Assessment Report. The Executive Summary provides a
18 similar synthesis of the information as provided in Chapter 10, and also includes a discussion of the
19 scope and approach of the draft Assessment Report and a description of the proximity of current
20 hydraulic fracturing activity and drinking water resources.

21 **3.8.1. Organization of Executive Summary and Chapter 10**

22
23 a. *Are the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 [Synthesis] clearly written and logically organized?*
24

25 The organization of the Executive Summary is logical, mirroring the draft Assessment Report’s overall
26 structure that is framed around the stages of the HFWC. As currently written, the Executive Summary is
27 understandable to technical experts in geoscience and engineering, but will be less clear to a general
28 audience. This broader audience comprises a substantial portion of the Executive Summary’s readership
29 and will include policy makers, regulators, the media, and general public. The SAB therefore
30 recommends that the EPA should significantly modify the form and content of the Executive Summary
31 and Chapter 10 Synthesis of the draft Assessment Report to make these discussions more understandable
32 to the general public and more suitable for a broad audience.
33

34 The SAB recommends that the EPA employ several strategies to facilitate the readership’s
35 understanding of the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 Synthesis of the draft Assessment Report. The
36 EPA should provide clearer statements on the goals and scope of the assessment and on specific
37 descriptions of hydraulic fracturing activities, and additional diagrams and illustrations should be
38 provided to enhance the public’s understanding of hydraulic fracturing activities and operations.
39 Technical terms should be clearly defined. Examples of these terms include, but are not limited to,
40 “chronic oral reference value,” “slope factor,” and “well pad,” “conductivity,” and “integrity failure.”
41 Measurements should, whenever possible, be placed in context to allow the reader to gain perspective.
42 For example, the text notes that approximately 4 million gallons is an average volume of water used in
43 during hydraulic fracturing of a horizontal well. The text should note how this volume compares to
44 water consumed for other uses. As a second example, the draft Assessment Report describes wastewater

1 with radium activities exceeding tens of thousands of picocuries per liter. The draft Assessment Report
2 should describe whether this is a dangerous level of radioactivity, and how these levels compare with
3 levels from activities of other common radioactive sources.
4

5 Another way to facilitate understanding of the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 for a general
6 audience is to employ more figures, graphs, and text boxes. The EPA should include additional figures
7 to clarify key concepts. Since many readers will struggle to visualize a constructed gas well, the
8 heterogeneous nature of rocks and sediments that comprise drinking water aquifers and confining units,
9 and pathways by which surface spills may contaminate groundwater, soil water, and surface water,
10 diagrams and photographs would help in this regard. A map of the major US shale plays should also be
11 considered for inclusion so that readers can visualize the geographic distribution of unconventional oil-
12 and-gas plays addressed in the Executive Summary.
13

14 The Executive Summary should cover the history of the EPA ORD effort surrounding the assessment of
15 hydraulic-fracturing impacts on drinking water. In particular, the Executive Summary should describe
16 the Research Scoping Plan, the development of the EPA's research Study Plan (U.S. EPA, 2011), and
17 the EPA's 2012 Progress Report (U.S. EPA, 2012). The peer review by the Science Advisory Board, as
18 well as efforts that the EPA undertook to engage stakeholders should also be summarized.
19

20 Prospective case studies, whereby drinking water resources at specific field sites were to be assessed
21 before and after hydraulic-fracturing activities, were part of the EPA's research Study Plan. These
22 prospective studies were not conducted, although the draft Assessment Report acknowledges the lack of
23 before-and-after studies as a serious limitation in the assessment of hydraulic fracturing effects on
24 drinking water. Since the EPA's exclusion of these studies could potentially be construed as a lack of
25 due diligence on the part of the EPA without further explanation, the EPA should include in the
26 Executive Summary its rationale for excluding the prospective case studies.
27

28 The Executive Summary focuses on national- and regional-level generalizations of the potential effects
29 of hydraulic fracturing-related activities on drinking water resources. Although these generalizations are
30 often desirable and useful, the EPA should make these conclusions cautiously, and clearly qualify these
31 conclusions through acknowledgement of the substantial heterogeneity existing in both natural and
32 engineered systems. Furthermore, the EPA should provide more emphasis in the Executive Summary on
33 the importance of local hydraulic fracturing impacts. These local-level hydraulic fracturing impacts may
34 occur infrequently, but they can be severe and the Executive Summary should more clearly describe
35 such impacts.
36

37 The SAB finds that Chapter 10 – the Report Synthesis – is nearly identical to the Executive Summary.
38 The SAB concludes that this chapter should be rewritten. The EPA should revise the Synthesis to
39 integrate information and findings from the various chapters of the draft Assessment Report.
40 Conclusions that are presented in the Synthesis should be more than results (e.g., measurements,
41 observations, model calculations); they should describe what is learned from the analyses, results and
42 findings across the chapters and describe what these imply when considered together. In the present
43 version of the Synthesis, the Conclusions (Section 10.3) are presented on a single page, which is far too
44 cursory given the expansiveness of the draft Assessment Report's coverage. Moreover, the conclusions
45 are not illuminating: they reflect little new or original information and reveal only an incremental
46 advance in the knowledge of hydraulic fracturing impacts. The draft Assessment Report contains a great
47 deal of valuable information, yet the Synthesis does not carry forth that information, fully describe and

1 assess what the EPA learned from the assessment, nor describe the implications of results that have been
2 identified.

3
4 The SAB suggests that the EPA reorganize the Synthesis by prioritizing the major findings that have
5 been identified within Chapters 4-9 of the draft Assessment Report (as opposed to mimicking the overall
6 organization of these chapters). The EPA could prioritize these findings according to expectations
7 regarding the magnitude of the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing-related activities on drinking
8 water resources. This structure could, in turn, facilitate consideration and explication of particular
9 practices that have, or could, mitigate the frequency and severity of water-resource impairments that
10 may be linked to the hydraulic fracturing-related activities.

11 **3.8.2. Major Findings and Interrelationships of Major Hydraulic Fracturing Stages**

12
13 *b. Does the Executive Summary clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the major findings of the*
14 *assessment for a broad audience, consistent with the body of the report?*

15
16 The Executive Summary does not clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the major findings of the
17 assessment for a broad audience. Some of the major findings are presented ambiguously within the
18 Executive Summary and are inconsistent with the observations and data presented in the body of the
19 draft Assessment Report. The statements of findings in the Executive Summary should be made more
20 precise. These statements should also be linked clearly to evidence provided in the body of the draft
21 Assessment Report and scrutinized to avoid any drift in tone or in the way impacts are described or
22 implied.

23
24 The SAB has concerns regarding the clarity and adequacy of support for several major findings
25 presented within the draft Assessment Report that seek to draw national-level conclusions regarding the
26 impacts of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources. The SAB is concerned that these major
27 findings do not clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the findings developed in the chapters of the
28 draft Assessment Report, and that the EPA has not adequately supported these major findings with data
29 or analysis from within the body of the draft Assessment Report. The SAB is concerned that these major
30 findings are presented ambiguously within the Executive Summary and are inconsistent with the
31 observations, data, and levels of uncertainty presented and discussed in the body of the draft Assessment
32 Report. Of particular concern in this regard is the high-level conclusion statement on page ES-6 that
33 “We did not find evidence that hydraulic fracturing mechanisms have led to widespread, systemic
34 impacts on drinking water resources in the United States.” The SAB finds that this statement does not
35 clearly describe the system(s) of interest (e.g., groundwater, surface water) nor the definitions of
36 “systemic,” “widespread,” or “impacts.” The SAB is also concerned that this statement does not reflect
37 the uncertainties and data limitations described in the body of the draft Assessment Report associated
38 with such impacts. Specific concerns regarding these data limitations include the generally voluntary
39 nature of reported incidents of spilled liquids and releases associated with hydraulic fracturing, the lack
40 of systematic study of hydraulic fracturing-related impacts that have occurred, the limited ability to
41 review significant amounts of hydraulic fracturing data due to litigation and confidential business
42 information issues, and the lack of knowledge about or monitoring methods for many chemicals and
43 compounds in hydraulic fracturing fluids. The statement is ambiguous and requires clarification and
44 additional explanation.

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

1 The above statement is presented also in Chapter 10 in somewhat different form on pages 10-19 and 10-
2 20, where it is noted that a major finding of the assessment is a “*lack of evidence that hydraulic*
3 *fracturing processes have led to widespread, systemic impacts on drinking water resources in the U.S.*
4 *The number of identified cases appears to be small compared to the number of hydraulically fractured*
5 *wells.*” While the draft Assessment Report points out that there is insufficient data, a paucity of long-
6 term systemic studies, and other mitigating factors, the EPA has not gone far enough to emphasize how
7 preliminary these key conclusions are and how limited the factual bases are for these judgments. The
8 SAB notes that the EPA’s estimates on the frequency of on-site spills were based upon information from
9 two states, and expresses concern that these estimates cannot be confidently extrapolated across the
10 entire U.S. based on such limited data. In addition, the SAB finds that available data on the
11 presence/identity of chemicals in flowback and produced water appears to be very limited. For example,
12 only three references are cited for all of the chemicals listed in Table A-4 of the draft Assessment
13 Report. Since information could not be located on measured concentrations for many hydraulic
14 fracturing chemicals, it is not possible to estimate human exposures or begin to assess the potential risks
15 to health associated with exposures to these chemicals. The EPA should have some information, at least
16 in terms of orders of magnitude, on how exposure to certain hydraulic fracturing chemicals compare to
17 adverse effect doses for these chemicals (e.g., for a few of the most potent chemicals) in order to make
18 this major finding. The statement is ambiguous and requires clarification and additional explanation.

19
20 Other examples of insufficient precision or elaboration on major findings within the Executive Summary
21 include:

- 22
23 • Page ES-6, lines 20-21: “*The number of identified cases, however, was small compared to the*
24 *number of hydraulically fractured wells.*” The descriptor “small” is vague and subjective. The
25 agency should quantify this statement based on the available data, and acknowledge the
26 uncertainty in the estimates.
- 27
28 • Page ES-9, lines 19-20: “*High fracturing water use or consumption alone does not necessarily*
29 *result in impacts to drinking water resources.*” This statement infers that to have an impact,
30 hydraulic fracturing activity must be the sole water use or source of consumption. The agency
31 should revise this statement and discussion surrounding this statement to reflect situations where
32 hydraulic fracturing may have contributed to impacts that have occurred, and to refer to cases
33 described in Chapter 4 of the draft Assessment Report that describe situations where hydraulic
34 fracturing may have influenced streams that ran dry and drinking water wells that ran out of
35 water.
- 36
37 • Page ES-13, lines 22-23: “None of the spills of hydraulic fracturing fluid were reported to have
38 reached ground water.” This statement is not supported by the information and data presented in
39 the assessment, due to the EPA’s incomplete assessment of spilled liquids and consequences.
40 The SAB is concerned that this major finding is supported only by an absence of evidence rather
41 than by evidence of absence of impact.
- 42
43 • Page ES-15, lines 34-35: “*According to the data examined, the overall frequency of occurrence*
44 *[of hydraulically fractured geologic units that also serve as a drinking water sources] appears to*
45 *be low...*” The agency should clarify this ambiguous statement, including the use of the word
46 “low,” and provide evidence within the assessment for this statement.
- 47

Science Advisory Board (SAB) Draft Report (1/7/16) to Assist Panel Deliberations—Do Not Cite or Quote—

This draft has not been reviewed or approved by the chartered SAB and does not represent the EPA policy.

- Page ES-19, lines 18-19: “*Chronic releases can and do occur from produced water stored in unlined pits or impoundments, and can have long-term impacts.*” The agency should discuss the frequency of this occurrence, provide details on in what states these releases occur most frequently, describe whether the frequency has decreased over time, and discuss the impacts that may occur.

The SAB is concerned that these major findings do not clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the major findings of the assessment for a broad audience, and that the EPA has not supported these six major findings with data or analysis from within the body of the draft Assessment Report. The SAB is also concerned that these major findings are presented ambiguously within the Executive Summary and are inconsistent with the observations and data presented in the body of the draft Assessment Report. The SAB recommends that the EPA revise these statements of findings in the Executive Summary and elsewhere in the draft Assessment Report to be more precise, and to clearly link these statements to evidence provided in the body of the draft Assessment Report. The SAB also recommends that the EPA discuss the significant data limitations and uncertainties associated with these major findings, as documented in the body of the Report, when presenting the major findings.

c1. In Chapter 10 [Synthesis], have the interrelationships and major findings for the major stages of the HFWC been adequately explored and identified.

Chapter 10 devotes little attention to the interrelationships among the major stages of the HFWC. Its presentation of major findings is incomplete, owing to insufficient analyses and omission of information that should have been taken into account within the draft Assessment Report.

The draft Assessment Report compartmentalizes the major stages of the HFWC into separate chapters. This compartmentalization is preserved in the Synthesis. As a result, implications that stem from integration of the major findings and potential issues that cut across chapters of the draft Assessment Report go largely unexplored.

The Synthesis does not culminate with any sort of integrated assessment of the relative contributions of hydraulic fracturing-related activities to the drinking water resource impairment or depletion. Such an integrated assessment would be useful and thus the EPA should consider rewriting Chapter 10 to describe the integrated assessment of these activities. The agency should strengthen the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 Synthesis by linking the stated findings more directly to evidence presented in the body of the draft Assessment Report. The SAB recognizes there may be difficulties in conducting such an integrated assessment given the limitations in the availability of monitoring and other types of environmental data as described repeatedly throughout the draft Assessment Report.

SAB’s response above to sub-question b for Charge Question 8 regarding the Executive Summary describes SAB’s concerns and recommendations regarding the presentation of major findings within Chapter 10 (since the presentation of major findings within Chapter 10 replicates the presentation of major findings within the Executive Summary). As described in that response, some of the major findings are presented ambiguously within the Executive Summary and are inconsistent with the observations and data presented in the body of the draft Assessment Report. The statements of findings in the Executive Summary should be made more precise. These statements also should be linked clearly to evidence provided in the body of the draft Assessment Report and scrutinized to avoid any drift in

1 tone or in the way impacts are described or implied. Additional specific concerns and recommendations
2 on this topic are provided in SAB’s response above to sub-question b for this charge question.

3
4 *c.2 Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward?*

5
6 The Synthesis (and the draft Assessment Report, more generally) fails to bring forward important
7 findings on the relationships between the HFWC and contamination of private drinking water wells,
8 including those in Dimock, Pennsylvania, Pavillion, Wyoming, and Parker County, Texas. Although the
9 role of hydraulic fracturing-related activities in water-well contamination within these localities
10 continues to be debated, these sites have a high profile and many members of the public view them as
11 being of high potential relevance to hydraulic fracturing-related impacts to drinking water resources.

12
13 While the EPA appropriately aimed to develop national-level analyses and perspective, most stresses to
14 surface or ground water resources associated with stages of the HFWC are localized. For example, the
15 impacts of water acquisition will predominantly be felt locally at small space and time scales. The draft
16 Assessment Report needs to do a better job of recognizing the importance of local impacts. In this
17 context, the SAB recommends that the EPA should include and fully explain the status, data on potential
18 releases, and findings if available for the EPA and state investigations conducted in Dimock,
19 Pennsylvania, Pavillion, Wyoming, and Parker County, Texas where hydraulic fracturing activities are
20 perceived by many members of the public to have caused impacts to drinking water resources.
21 Examination of these high-visibility cases is important so that the public can understand the status of
22 investigations in these areas, conclusions associated with the investigations, lessons learned for
23 hydraulic fracturing practice if any, plans for remediation if any, and the degree to which information
24 from these case studies can be extrapolated to other locations.

25 **3.8.3. Additional Information, Background or Context to be Added**

26
27 *8d. Are there sections in Chapter 10 [Synthesis] that should be expanded? Or additional information*
28 *added?*

29
30 The Synthesis should be revised and expanded. As currently written, the Synthesis is a replication of
31 findings presented in the previous chapters. The Synthesis should be revised to be more integrative
32 according to SAB’s response above to sub-questions a and c for Charge Question 8. Moreover, the
33 Synthesis should be expanded to present recommendations drawn from a holistic consideration of the
34 findings presented in Chapters 4-9 of the draft Assessment Report. These recommendations could
35 include discussion of current practices identified in the study that have been demonstrated to lower the
36 frequency of accidents (e.g., spills) and other problems (e.g., well-integrity failure) or improvements to
37 existing hydraulic fracturing practices.

38
39 While the Synthesis identifies several limitations and uncertainties that hinder evaluation of the potential
40 effects of hydraulic fracturing-related activities on drinking water resources, the Synthesis should
41 describe recommended next steps (e.g., where we go from here). Chapter 10 should leverage the draft
42 Assessment Report’s review of relevant literature and synthesis of knowledge gaps to identify research
43 needs and steps that could be taken to reduce the uncertainties associated with the potential effects of
44 hydraulic fracturing-related activities on drinking water resources. This research agenda should be
45 appropriately selective, perhaps consisting of one or two priority research areas associated with each
46 stage of the HFWC, as well as critical research foci that cut across these stages.

1
2 The draft Assessment Report should also identify future research and assessment needs and future field
3 studies. This discussion should include the EPA’s plans for conducting prospective studies and other
4 research that the EPA had planned to conduct but did not conduct. This SAB Report also identifies
5 several recommendations for future research and assessment needs that should be considered for
6 inclusion.

REFERENCES

The following additional references were cited within responses to charge questions within this SAB Report, and are provided to improve the literature base for EPA’s draft Assessment Report and to help ensure a more comprehensive understanding of hydraulic fracturing activities and operations:

Abualfaraj, N., Gurian, P.L.; and Olson, M.S. 2014. Characterization of Marcellus Shale Flowback Water. *Environ. Eng. Sci.* 31(9), p. 514-524. September 2014. doi:10.1089/ees.2014.0001.

Amy, G., M. Siddiqui, W. Zhai, J. DeBroux, and W. Odem. 1994. American Water Works Association Research Foundation (AwwaRF) Final Report - Survey on bromide in drinking water and impacts on DBP formation. American Water Works Association Research Foundation.

Bair, E.S., D.C. Freeman, and J.M. Senko. 2010. Expert Panel Report on the Bainbridge Township Gas Invasion Incident. Ohio Department of Natural Resources, Division of Minerals Resources Management, 2010, 431 p.

Balashov, V.N., T. Engelder, X. Gu, M.S. Fantle, and S.L. Brantley. 2015. A model describing flowback chemistry changes with time after Marcellus Shale hydraulic fracturing. *American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin* 99(1), 143-154. January 2015. doi: 110.1306/06041413119.

Battelle. 2013. Dunn County, North Dakota Retrospective Case Study - Site Characterization Report. Battelle. Technical Memo 2, Contract No. CON00011206. February 2013. Available at: http://www.api.org/~media/Files/Policy/Hydraulic_Fracturing/Battelle-Studies/Dunn-NDReport-13-Feb-22.pdf

Boyer, E.W., B.R. Swistock, J. Clark, M. Madden, and D.E. Rizzo. 2012. The impact of Marcellus Gas Drilling on Rural Drinking Water Supplies. *The Center for Rural Pennsylvania, Pennsylvania General Assembly*, http://www.rural.palegislature.us/documents/reports/Marcellus_and_drinking_water_2012.pdf, accessed October 2014, Harrisburg, PA.

Brantley, S.L., D. Yoxtheimer, S. Arjmand, P. Grieve, R. Vidic, J. Pollak, G.T. Llewellyn, J. Abad, and C. Simon. 2014. Water resource impacts during unconventional shale gas development: The Pennsylvania experience. *International Journal of Coal Geology* 126, p. 140-156. June 1, 2014. dx.doi.org/110.1016/j.coal.2013.1012.1017

Darrah, TH; Vengosh, A; Jackson, RB; Warner, NR; Poreda, RJ. 2014. Noble gases identify the mechanisms of fugitive gas contamination in drinking water wells overlying the Marcellus and Barnett Shales. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences (PNAS)* 111(39), p. 14076-14081. September 30, 2013. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1322107111>

Ellsworth, W.L. 2013. Injection-induced earthquakes. *Science* 341(6142). July 12, 2013. doi: 10.1126/science.1225942.

- 1 European Centre for Ecotoxicology and Toxicology of Chemicals (Ecetox). 2014. Technical Report 116.
2 <http://echa.europa.eu/support/grouping-of-substances-and-read-across>
3
- 4 Fan, W., Zhang, T., Carpenter, J., et al. 2014. Experimental investigations of trace metal and
5 radionuclide leaching from shales in contact with hydraulic fracturing fluids. *Abstracts of Papers of the*
6 *247th American Chemical Society Annual Meeting* - Meeting Abstract: 85-ENVR. March 16, 2014.
7
- 8 Fischetti, M. 2012. Ohio Earthquake Likely Caused by Fracking Wastewater. 2012. *Scientific American*
9 306(1). January 4, 2012.
10
- 11 Gross, S.A., H.J. Avens, A.M. Banducci, J. Sahmel, J. Panko, and Tvermous, B.T. 2013. Analysis of
12 BTEX groundwater concentrations form surface spills associates with hydraulic fracturing operations. *J.*
13 *Air Waste Manag. Assoc.* 63(4), p. 424-432.
14
- 15 Haluszczak, L.O., A.W. Rose, and L.R. Kump. 2013. Geochemical evaluation of flowback brine from
16 Marcellus gas wells in Pennsylvania, U.S.A. *Applied Geochemistry* 28, 55-61. January 2013.
17 doi.org/10.1016/j.apgeochem.2012.1010.1002.
18
- 19 Hayes, T. 2009. Sampling and analysis of water streams associated with the development of Marcellus
20 shale gas. Des Plaines, IL: Marcellus Shale Coalition. [http://eidmarcellus.org/wp-](http://eidmarcellus.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/11/MSCCommission-Report.pdf)
21 [content/uploads/2012/11/MSCCommission-Report.pdf](http://eidmarcellus.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/11/MSCCommission-Report.pdf)
22
- 23 Holland, A. 2011, Examination of Possibly Induced Seismicity from Hydraulic Fracturing in the Eola
24 Field, Garvin County, Oklahoma. *Oklahoma Geological Survey Open File report OF1-2011*. August
25 2011.
26
- 27 Horner, R. B., J. E. Barclay and J. M. MacRae, 1994. Earthquakes and Hydrocarbon Production in the
28 Fort St. John Area of Northeastern British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Exploration Geophysics*
29 30(1), p. 39-50.
30
- 31 Hua, G.H., D.A. Reckhow, and J. Kim. 2006. Effect of bromide and iodide ions on the formation and
32 speciation of disinfection byproducts during chlorination. *Environ. Sci. & Tech.* 40(9), p. 3050-3056.
33 May 1, 2006. doi: 10.1021/es0519278.
34
- 35 Kondash, A.J., Warner, N.R., Lahav, O., et al. 2014. Radium and Barium Removal through Blending
36 Hydraulic Fracturing Fluids with Acid Mine Drainage. *Environ. Sci. & Tech.* 48(2), p. 1334-1342.
37 January 21, 2014.
38
- 39 Leenheer, J.A., T.I. Noyes, and H.A. Stuber, 1982. Determination of polar organic solutes in oil-shale
40 retort water. *Environ. Sci. & Tech.* 16(10), p. 714-723. October 1982. doi: 10.1021/es00104a015.
41
- 42 Lester, Y., I. Ferrer, E.M. Thurman, et al. 2015. Characterization of hydraulic fracturing flowback water
43 in Colorado: Implications for water treatment. *Science of the Total Environment* 512, p. 637-644.
44 February, 2015. doi: 10.1016/j.scitotenv.2015.01.043.
45
- 46 Llewellyn, G., F.L. Dorman, J.L. Westland, D. Yoxtheimer, P. Grieve, T. Sowers, E. Humston-Flumer,
47 and S.L. Brantley. 2015. Evaluating a groundwater supply contamination incident attributed to

- 1 Marcellus Shale gas development. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 112(20), 6325-
2 6330. May 19, 2015. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1420279112.
3
- 4 McNamara, D.E., H.M. Benz, R.B. Hermann, E.A. Bergman, P. Earle, A. Holland, R. Baldwin, and A.
5 Gassner. 2015. Earthquake hypocenters and focal mechanisms in central Oklahoma reveal a complex
6 system of reactivated subsurface strike-slip faulting. *Geophysical Research Letters* 42(8), p. 2742-2749.
7 doi: 10.1002/2014GL062730.
8
- 9 North Dakota Department of Health. 2015. Reporting requirements for spills can be found here:
10 <http://www.ndhealth.gov/EHS/Spills/>
11
- 12 Obolensky, A., and P.C. Singer. 2005. Halogen substitution patterns among disinfection byproducts in
13 the information collection rule database. *Environ. Sci. & Tech.* 39(8), p. 2719-2730. March 16, 2005.
14 doi: 10.1021/es0489339
15
- 16 Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD). 2014. Provision of knowledge and
17 information - chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing. *52nd Joint Meeting of the Chemicals Committee*
18 *and the Working Part on Chemicals, Pesticides and Biotechnology*. ENV/JM(2014)25. For presentation
19 at November 4-6, 2014 Meeting, Paris, France. September 19, 2014.
20
- 21 Perry, S.A., T.A. Smrecak, K. Cronin, and Paleontological Research Institution Marcellus Shale Team.
22 2011. Making the Earth Shake: Understanding Induced Seismicity. *Paleontological Research*
23 *Institution*, Museum of the Earth, Ithaca, NY. 2011.
24
- 25 Plewa, M. J., and E.D. Wagner. 2009. Mammalian Cell Cytotoxicity and Genotoxicity of Disinfection
26 By-Products. *Water Research Foundation*, Denver, CO. pp 134.
27
- 28 Rice, J. and P. Westerhoff. 2015a. Spatial and Temporal Variation in De Facto Wastewater Reuse in
29 Drinking Water Systems across the USA. *Environ. Sci. & Tech.* 49(2), p. 982-989. January 20, 2015.
30 doi: 10.1021/es5048057.
31
- 32 Rice, J., S. Via, and P. Westerhoff. 2015b. Extent and Impacts of Unplanned Wastewater Reuse in U.S.
33 Rivers. *J. American Water Works Association*, 107, p.11:93 In Press. doi:
34 10.5942/jawwa.2015.107.0178.
35
- 36 Richardson, S.D., M. Plewa, and E. D. Wagner. 2014. Charting a New Path to Resolve the Adverse
37 Health Effects of DBPs. Keynote address at the 'DBP 2014: Disinfection By-Products in Drinking
38 Water' Conference. Muelheim, Germany. 2014.
39
- 40 SAB (Science Advisory Board, U.S. EPA). 2010. Advisory on EPA's Research Scoping Document
41 Related to Hydraulic Fracturing. EPA-SAB-10-009. June 24, 2010
42
- 43 SAB (Science Advisory Board, U.S. EPA). 2011. Review of EPA's Draft Hydraulic Fracturing Study
44 Plan. EPA-SAB-11-012. August 4, 2011
45

- 1 Skoumal, R.J., M.R. Brudzinski, and B.S. Currie. 2015. Earthquakes Induced by Hydraulic Fracturing in
2 Poland Township, Ohio. 2015. *Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America*, published ahead of
3 print on January 6, 2015.
- 4
- 5 Society of Petroleum Engineers. 2013. Cement bond diagram. Available at the following website:
6 http://petrowiki.org/File%3AVol5_Page_0185_Image_0001.png. March 27, 2013.
- 7
- 8 State of Colorado. 2014. Sampling and measurement requirements prior to and after all oil and gas
9 drilling activity. Provided at the following website:
10 http://cogcc.state.co.us/documents/about/TF_Summaries/GovTaskForceSummary_Environmental%20G
11 [roundwater%20Sampling_09202014.pdf](http://cogcc.state.co.us/documents/about/TF_Summaries/GovTaskForceSummary_Environmental%20G). 2014.
- 12
- 13 States, S., G. Cyprych, M. Stoner, F. Wydra, J. Kuchta, J. Monnell, and L. Casson. 2013. Marcellus
14 shale drilling and brominated THMs in Pittsburgh, Pa., drinking water. *J. American Water Works*
15 *Association* 105(8), p. E432-E448.
- 16
- 17 U.S. EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2010. Scoping materials for initial design of EPA
18 research study on potential relationships between hydraulic fracturing and drinking water resources.
19 March 2010. Available at
20 <http://yosemite.epa.gov/sab/sabproduct.nsf/MeetingCal/4CAA95A38952145F852576D3005DAA17?Op>
21 [enDocument](http://yosemite.epa.gov/sab/sabproduct.nsf/MeetingCal/4CAA95A38952145F852576D3005DAA17?Op)
- 22
- 23 U.S. EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2011. Plan to study the potential impacts of
24 hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington,
25 DC, EPA/600/R-11/122, November 2011.
- 26
- 27 U.S. EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2012. Study of the potential impacts of hydraulic
28 fracturing on drinking water resources: Progress Report. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,
29 Washington, DC, EPA/601/R-12/011, December 2012.
- 30
- 31 U.S. EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2015. Assessment of the potential impacts of
32 hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas on drinking water resources (External Review Draft). U.S.
33 Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, EPA/600/R-15/047, 2015.
- 34
- 35 U.S. FDA (U.S. Food and Drug Administration). Generally Recognized as Safe (GRAS)
36 <http://www.fda.gov/Food/IngredientsPackagingLabeling/GRAS>
- 37
- 38 USGS (U.S. Geological Survey). 1996. Regional Aquifer Systems Analyses Programs.
39 <http://water.usgs.gov/ogw/rasa/html/introduction.html> and
40 <http://water.usgs.gov/ogw/gwrp/activities/gw-avail.html>
- 41
- 42 USGS (U.S. Geological Survey). 2000. Ground Water Atlas of the United States.
43 <http://water.usgs.gov/ogw/aquifer/atlas.html>
- 44
- 45 Vidic, R.D., S.L. Brantley, J.M. Vandenbossche, D. Yoxtheimer, and J.D. Abad. 2013. Impact of Shale
46 Gas Development on Regional Water Quality. *Science* 340(6134), p. 826-835. May 17, 2013.
47 DOI:10.1126/science.1235009.

- 1
2 Wambaugh, J.F., R.W. Setzer, D.M. Reif, S. Gangwal, J. Mitchell-Blackwood, J.A. Arnot, O. Joliet, A.
3 Frame, J. Rabinowitz, T.B. Knudsen, R.S. Judson, P. Egeghy, D. Vallero, and E.A. Cohen Hubal. 2013.
4 High-throughput models for exposure-based chemical prioritization in the ExpoCast Project. *Environ Sci*
5 *Technol* 47(15), p. 8479-8488. August 6, 2013. doi: 10.1021/es400482g.
6
7 Wang, L., Fortner, J.D., and Giammar, D.E. 2015. Impact of Water Chemistry on Element Mobilization
8 from Eagle Ford Shale. *Env. Eng. Sci.* 32(4), p. 310-320. April 1, 2015. doi: 10.1089/ees.2014.0342.
9
10 Weingartern, M., S. Ge, J.W., Godt, B.A. Bekins, and J.L. Rubinstein. 2015. High-rate injection is
11 associated with the increase in U.S. mid-continent seismicity. *Science* 348(6241), p. 1336-1340. June 19,
12 2015. doi: 10.1126/science.aab1345
13
14 Westerhoff, P., P. Chao, and H. Mash. 2004. Reactivity of natural organic matter with aqueous chlorine
15 and bromine. *Water Research* 38(6), p. 1502-1513. March 2004. doi: 10.1016/j.watres.2003.12.014.
16
17 Wetmore, B.A., J.F. Wambaugh, B. Allen, S.S. Ferguson, M.A. Sochaski, R.W. Setzer, K.A. Houck,
18 C.L. Strobe, K. Cantwell, R.S. Judson, E. LeCluyse, H. Clewell, R.S. Thomas, and M.E. Andersen.
19 2015. Incorporating high-throughput exposure predictions with dosimetry adjusted in vitro bioactivity to
20 inform chemical toxicity testing. *Toxicol Sci.* 148(1), p. 121-36. November 2015. doi:
21 10.1093/toxsci/kfv171.
22
23 Yeck, W.L., L.V. Block, C.K. Wood, and V.M. King. 2015. Maximum magnitude estimations of
24 induced earthquakes at Paradox Valley, Colorado, from cumulative injection volume and geometry of
25 seismicity clusters. *Geophys. J. Int.* 200(1), p. 322–336. January 2015. doi: 10.1093/gji/ggu394.
26
27 Zoback, M.D., and D.J. Arent. 2014. Shale Gas Development Opportunities and Challenges - The
28 Bridge on Emerging Issues. *Earth Resources Engineering* 44(1). Spring 2014.
29 <https://www.nae.edu/Publications/Bridge/110801/111035.aspx>
30

APPENDIX A—EPA’S CHARGE QUESTIONS

Charge Questions for the SAB Review of the USEPA Report: *Assessment of the Potential Impacts of Hydraulic Fracturing for Oil and Gas on Drinking Water Resources* Revised (October 8, 2015)

Background

The purpose of this assessment (U.S. EPA, 2015), entitled *Assessment of the Potential Impacts of Hydraulic Fracturing for Oil and Gas on Drinking Water Resources*, was to synthesize available scientific literature and data on the potential for hydraulic fracturing for oil and gas to change the quality or quantity of drinking water resources, and to identify factors affecting the frequency or severity of any potential changes. In fiscal year 2010, the U.S. Congress urged the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) to examine the relationship between hydraulic fracturing and drinking water. In response, the EPA developed a research study plan (U.S. EPA, 2011) which was reviewed by the Agency’s Science Advisory Board (SAB) and issued in 2011. A progress report (U.S. EPA, 2012) on the study detailing the EPA’s research approaches and next steps was released in late 2012, and was followed by a consultation with individual experts convened under the auspices of the SAB in May 2013. The EPA’s study included original research, and the results from these research projects were considered in the development of this draft assessment report.

This assessment follows the HFWC described in the Study Plan and Progress Report. The water cycle includes five stages: (1) water acquisition for hydraulic fracturing fluids; (2) chemical mixing to form fracturing fluids; (3) well injection of fracturing fluids; (4) flowback and produced water; and (5) wastewater treatment and disposal. Potential impacts on drinking water resources are considered at each stage in this cycle. Drinking water resources are defined broadly within this report to include any body of ground water or surface water that now serves, or in the future could serve, as a source of drinking water for public and private use.

EPA authors examined over 3,500 individual sources of information, and cited over 950 of these sources for this assessment. Sources evaluated included articles published in science and engineering journals, federal and state reports, non-governmental organization reports, oil and gas industry publications, other publicly-available data and information, and data, including confidential and non-confidential business information, submitted by industry to the EPA. The assessment also included citation of relevant literature developed as part of the Study Plan.

This assessment is a synthesis of the science. It is not a human exposure or risk assessment, and does not attempt to evaluate policies or make policy recommendations. Rather, it focuses on the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing activities, and factors affecting the frequency or severity of any potential changes. As such, this report can be used by federal, tribal, state, and local officials; industry; and the public to better understand and address vulnerabilities of drinking water resources to hydraulic fracturing activities.

1 EPA asks the SAB to review the hydraulic fracturing drinking water assessment and provides the
2 following charge questions for that review. The charge questions follow the structure of the assessment.
3 Charge question 1 asks about the introduction of the assessment (Chapter 1), and descriptions of
4 hydraulic fracturing activities and drinking water resources (Chapters 2-3). Charge questions 2 through 6
5 ask about the individual stages in the HFWC (Chapters 4-8). Charge question 7 asks about the
6 identification and hazard evaluation of chemicals (Chapter 9); and charge question 8 asks about the
7 synthesis of the material presented in the Executive Summary and Chapter 10.

8 9 **Charge Questions**

- 10
- 11 1. The goal of the assessment was to review, analyze, and synthesize available data and information
12 concerning the potential impacts of hydraulic fracturing on drinking water resources in the
13 United States, including identifying factors affecting the frequency or severity of any potential
14 impacts. In Chapter 1 of the assessment, are the goals, background, scope, approach, and
15 intended use of this assessment clearly articulated? In Chapters 2 and 3, are the descriptions of
16 hydraulic fracturing and drinking water resources clear and informative as background material?
17 Are there topics that should be added to Chapters 2 and 3 to provide needed background for the
18 assessment?
19
 - 20 2. The scope of the assessment was defined by the HFWC, which includes a series of activities
21 involving water that support hydraulic fracturing. The first stage in the HFWC is water
22 acquisition: the withdrawal of ground or surface water needed for hydraulic fracturing fluids.
23 This is addressed in Chapter 4.
 - 24 a. Does the assessment accurately and clearly summarize the available information
25 concerning the sources and quantities of water used in hydraulic fracturing?
 - 26 b. Are the quantities of water used and consumed in hydraulic fracturing accurately
27 characterized with respect to total water use and consumption at appropriate temporal and
28 spatial scales?
 - 29 c. Are the major findings concerning water acquisition fully supported by the information
30 and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential
31 impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other
32 major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the
33 frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?
 - 34 d. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning water acquisition fully and
35 clearly described?
 - 36 e. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps
37 should be assessed to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water
38 resources from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that
39 should be added in this section of the report?
40
 - 41 3. The second stage in the HFWC is chemical mixing: the mixing of water, chemicals, and
42 proppant on the well pad to create the hydraulic fracturing fluid. This is addressed in Chapter 5.
 - 43 a. Does the assessment accurately and clearly summarize the available information
44 concerning the composition, volume, and management of the chemicals used to create
45 hydraulic fracturing fluids?
 - 46 b. Are the major findings concerning chemical mixing fully supported by the information
47 and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential

- 1 impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other
2 major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the
3 frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?
4 c. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical mixing fully and
5 clearly described?
6 d. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps
7 should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water
8 resources from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that
9 should be added in this section of the report?

- 10
11 4. The third stage in the HFWC is well injection: the injection of hydraulic fracturing fluids into the
12 well to enhance oil and gas production from the geologic formation by creating new fractures
13 and dilating existing fractures. This is addressed in Chapter 6.
14 a. Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information
15 concerning well injection, including well construction and well integrity issues and the
16 movement of hydraulic fracturing fluids, and other materials in the subsurface?
17 b. Are the major findings concerning well injection fully supported by the information and
18 data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential impacts
19 to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other major
20 findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or
21 severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?
22 c. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning well injection fully and
23 clearly described?
24 d. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps
25 should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water
26 resources from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that
27 should be added in this section of the report?

- 28
29 5. The fourth stage in the HFWC focuses on flowback and produced water: the return of injected
30 fluid and water produced from the formation to the surface and subsequent transport for reuse,
31 treatment, or disposal. This is addressed in Chapter 7.
32 a. Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information
33 concerning the composition, volume, and management of flowback and produced waters?
34 b. Are the major findings concerning flowback and produced water fully supported by the
35 information and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the
36 potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there
37 other major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the
38 frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?
39 c. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning flowback and produced
40 water fully and clearly described?
41 d. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps
42 should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water
43 resources from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that
44 should be added in this section of the report?
45
46

- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
6. The fifth stage in the HFWC focuses on wastewater treatment and waste disposal: the reuse, treatment and release, or disposal of wastewater generated at the well pad. This is addressed in Chapter 8.
 - a. Does the assessment clearly and accurately summarize the available information concerning hydraulic fracturing wastewater management, treatment, and disposal?
 - b. Are the major findings concerning wastewater treatment and disposal fully supported by the information and data presented in the assessment? Do these major findings identify the potential impacts to drinking water resources due to this stage of the HFWC? Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?
 - c. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning wastewater treatment and waste disposal fully and clearly described?
 - d. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should be assessed, to better characterize any potential impacts to drinking water resources from this stage of the HFWC? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?

19
20
21
22

 7. The assessment used available information and data to identify chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing fluids and/or present in flowback and produced waters. Known physicochemical and toxicological properties of those chemicals were compiled and summarized. This is addressed in Chapter 9.
 - a. Does the assessment present a clear and accurate characterization of the available chemical and toxicological information concerning chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing?
 - b. Does the assessment clearly identify and describe the constituents of concern that potentially impact drinking water resources?
 - c. Are the major findings fully supported by the information and data presented in the assessment? Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward? Are the factors affecting the frequency or severity of any impacts described to the extent possible and fully supported?
 - d. Are the uncertainties, assumptions, and limitations concerning chemical and toxicological properties fully and clearly described?
 - e. What additional information, background, or context should be added, or research gaps should be assessed, to better characterize chemical and toxicological information in this assessment? Are there relevant literature or data sources that should be added in this section of the report?

23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38

 8. The Executive Summary and Chapter 10 provide a synthesis of the information in this assessment. In particular, the Executive Summary was written for a broad audience.
 - a. Are the Executive Summary and Chapter 10 clearly written and logically organized?
 - b. Does the Executive Summary clearly, concisely, and accurately describe the major findings of the assessment for a broad audience, consistent with the body of the report?
 - c. In Chapter 10, have interrelationships and major findings for the major stages of the HFWC been adequately explored and identified? Are there other major findings that have not been brought forward?
- 39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

1
2
3
4
5

- d. Are there sections in Chapter 10 that should be expanded? Or additional information added?